



**UNIVERSITY OF THE WITWATERSRAND
SCHOOL OF LITERATURE, LANGUAGE AND MEDIA**

TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING STUDIES

**THE PRACTICE OF TRANSLATION IN THE AFRICAN UNION:
A CASE STUDY OF THE PARLIAMENT AND THE COMMISSION**

BY

RAYMOND CODJO TOHOUEYOU

**AN MA BY COURSEWORK AND RESEARCH REPORT SUBMITTED TO THE
FACULTY OF HUMANITIES, UNIVERSITY OF THE WITWATERSRAND, IN
PARTIAL FULFILMENT OF THE REQUIREMENTS FOR THE AWARD OF A
MASTER OF ARTS IN TRANSLATION AND INTERPRETING STUDIES**

Dedication

First, this work is dedicated to God the Almighty whose abundant grace and mercies saw me through this course at the Department of Translation and Interpreting Studies of the University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, South Africa. To my daughter and my spouse, Dziedzorm and Margaret Mary Tohouenou, for their sacrifices, encouragement, support and patience which kept me going through difficult times, and to my parents Landry (of blessed memory) and Catherine Tohouenou for the gift of education.

Declaration

I, Codjo Raymond Tohouenou, wish to declare that this work is my own, unaided work, except where otherwise acknowledged. It is being submitted as part of the requirements for the award of the degree of Master of Arts in Translation at the University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg. This work has not been submitted before for any degree or examination in any other University.

Signed this 25th day of June 2013

.....

Raymond Codjo Tohouenou

Acknowledgements

First, I am indebted to my supervisor, Professor Judith Inggs, Head of Department of Translation and Interpreting Studies of the University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, South Africa, whose encouragement, generosity, patience, guidance, advice, and, above all, meticulous attention to detail, has led to the successful completion of this MA Research Report.

Second, I would like to express my gratitude to the Head of the School of Literature, Language and Media, Professor Libby Meintjes, who read and critiqued my MA Proposal.

Third, I owe my daughter and wife Dzedzorm and Margaret Mary Tohouenou a debt of gratitude for their constant support over the two years I spent at the University of the Witwatersrand.

Fourth, I am indebted to the Head of Documentation of the Pan-African Parliament (PAP), Mr Jan Jalloh, for his kindness and generous help; to all the translators and interpreters of the AUC and the PAP (regular and freelance alike) who kindly took time off their busy schedules to answer my questions; and to the Clerk of the PAP for granting me permission to conduct the study.

Finally, I say thank you to Marilyn Thorne, the Administrator, and to all the lecturers of the Department of Translation and Interpreting at the University of the Witwatersrand.

Abstract

Translation is enjoying growing recognition in today's globalised world. It plays an important role in all spheres of human activities and is fundamental to intercultural communication, particularly in international organisations. This empirical research therefore explores how the profession is practised at the African Union, particularly at the African Union Commission (AUC) and the Pan-African Parliament (PAP). More specifically, it establishes the profile of translators in both institutions, assesses the quality of translations, and determines if translations are source or target-oriented. To this end, this study uses statistical and documentary research as well as quantitative and qualitative data gathering through personal interviews with translators and a supervisor. Further, it critically evaluates four original texts and their translations using House's (1997) model of translation quality assessment. Except for the *Solemn Declaration of Oath of Allegiance*, the evaluated texts displayed ideational features purposefully aimed at informing the readership. These result in a *covert* translation strategy being employed by translators and a cultural filter being applied in order to achieve a functional equivalence. A critical analysis of questionnaires and personal interviews with translators and one supervisor through purposive sampling shows that translation plays a strategic role in the smooth running of the two institutions. Translators mostly adhered to original texts, while ensuring that the translation was natural and fluent.

Table of Contents

Dedication	ii
Declaration	iii
Acknowledgements	iv
Abstract	v
Table of Contents	vi
List of Tables	xi
List of Charts	xii
List of Abbreviations	xiii
1. CHAPTER ONE: BACKGROUND INFORMATION	1
1.1. INTRODUCTION	1
1.2. RESEARCH OBJECTIVES	6
1.2.1. Aim of the study	6
1.2.2. Specific objectives of the study	7
1.3. RATIONALE OF THE STUDY	7
1.4. OUTLINE OF CHAPTERS	9
2. CHAPTER TWO: LITERATURE REVIEW & THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK	11

2.1.	LITERATURE REVIEW	11
2.2.	THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK	28
3.	CHAPTER THREE: METHODOLOGY	39
3.1.	INTRODUCTION	39
3.2.	QUESTIONNAIRE DESIGN	41
3.3.	STUDY AREA	41
3.4.	DATA COLLECTION	41
3.4.1.	Data collection methods	42
3.5.	SAMPLE AND SAMPLING TECHNIQUES	43
3.6.	DATA ANALYSIS	43
3.7.	MODEL AND CRITERIA FOR THE ASSESSMENT OF TRANSLATION QUALITY AT THE AUC AND THE PAP	43
4.	CHAPTER FOUR: TRANSLATION QUALITY ASSESSMENT	49
4.1.	INTRODUCTION	49
4.2.	TEXT ONE: PROTOCOL TO THE TREATY ESTABLISHING THE AFRICAN ECONOMIC COMMUNITY (SEE ENGLISH ST AT APPENDIX F)	50
4.2.1.	Analysis of the original text	50
4.2.2.	Statement of function	53
4.2.3.	Analysis of the target text (See French TT at Appendix G)	54
4.2.4.	Statement of quality	59
4.3.	TEXT TWO: OATH/SOLEMN DECLARATION OF ALLEGIANCE (SEE ENGLISH ST AT APPENDIX H)	64
4.3.1.	Analysis of the original text	64

4.3.2.	Statement of function	66
4.3.3.	Analysis of the target text (See TT Appendix I)	68
4.3.4.	Statement of quality	71
4.4.	TEXT THREE: PROJET D'ALLOCATION DU PRÉSIDENT DE LA COMMISSION, DR JEAN PING (SEE FRENCH ST AT APPENDIX J)	76
4.4.1.	Analysis of the original text (See Appendix J)	76
4.4.2.	Statement of function	78
4.4.3.	Analysis of the target text (See Appendix K)	80
4.4.4.	Statement of quality	84
4.5.	TEXT FOUR: LETTRE DU PRÉSIDENT (SEE FRENCH ST AT APPENDIX L)	88
4.5.1.	Analysis of the original text	88
4.5.2.	Statement of function	90
4.5.3.	Analysis of the target text (See Appendix M)	91
4.5.4.	Statement of quality	94
4.6.	CONCLUSION	99
5.	CHAPTER FIVE: ANALYSIS, COMMENTARY, AND DISCUSSION OF FINDINGS AT THE AUC AND THE PAP	101
5.1.	DATA ANALYSIS	101
5.1.1.	Number of years as translators/interpreters	102
5.1.2.	Do translators keep closer to the ST or produce a more fluent translation?	105
5.1.3.	How is the information contained in translations disseminated in Member States?	106
5.2.	DISCUSSION OF THE FINDINGS	107
5.2.1.	Translation at the PAP	107
5.2.2.	Mission and function of the Documentation Unit	107
5.2.3.	Mission and functions of the Translation Department of the AUC	108
5.2.4.	Workforce of the Documentation Unit of the PAP	108
5.2.5.	Source and format of documents at the AUC and the PAP	109
5.2.6.	Freelance translators and outsourcing of documents	109

5.2.7.	Types of documents translated at the AUC and the PAP	110
5.2.8.	Working languages and implications for the AU	112
5.2.9.	Translation: internal processes and procedures at the AUC and the PAP	116
5.2.10.	Tools and equipment at the disposal of translators at the AUC and the PAP	116
5.3.	TRANSLATORS AT THE AUC AND THE PAP	116
5.3.1.	Profile and status of translators at the AUC and the PAP	119
5.3.2.	Theory vs. practice	119
5.3.3.	Strategies/Approaches to translation	121
5.3.4.	Do translators keep closer to the ST or produce a more fluent translation?	122
5.3.5.	How is information contained in translated documents disseminated in Member States?	123
6.	CHAPTER SIX: CONCLUSION AND RECOMMENDATIONS	125
6.1.	CONCLUSION	125
6.2.	RECOMMENDATIONS	129
7.	REFERENCES	131
7.1.	ORGANISATIONS AND WEBSITES	136
7.2.	LANGUAGE-INDUSTRY PUBLICATIONS	136
7.3.	WEBSITES	136
8.	APPENDICES	138
	APPENDIX A: QUESTIONNAIRE/INTERVIEW (TRANSLATORS)	138
	APPENDIX B: QUESTIONNAIRE/INTERVIEW (SUPERVISORS)	141
	APPENDIX C: JOB ADVERTISEMENT (HEAD OF INTERPRETATION DIVISION) CSD01/2011	143
	APPENDIX D: JOB ADVERTISEMENT (HEAD OF TRANSLATION DIVISION) CSD 02/2012	146

APPENDIX E: JOB ADVERTISEMENT INTERPRETER/TRANSLATOR-ARABIC– PAP/ADV/02/2012	149
APPENDIX F: PROTOCOL TO THE TREATY ESTABLISHING THE AFRICAN ECONOMIC COMMUNITY (ENGLISH ST- FRENCH TT AT APPENDIX G)	152
APPENDIX G: PROTOCOLE AU TRAITE INSTITUANT LA CEA (FRENCH TT)	163
APPENDIX H: OATH/SOLEMN DECLARATION OF ALLEGIANCE (ENGLISH ST- FRENCH TT AT APPENDIX I)	189
APPENDIX I: PRESTATION DE SERMENT DES MEMBRES DU PARLEMENT PANAFRICAIN (FRENCH TT)	190
APPENDIX J: PROJECT D'ALLOCATION DU PRESIDENT DE LA COMMISSION, DR JEAN PING (FRENCH ST- ENGLISH TT AT APPENDIX K)	191
APPENDIX K: STATEMENT OF THE CHAIRPERSON OF THE COMMISSION, DR JEAN PING (ENGLISH TT)	205
APPENDIX L: LETTRE DU PRESIDENT (FRENCH ST- ENGLISH TT AT APPENDIX M)	214
APPENDIX M: LETTER FROM THE CHAIRPERSON (ENGLISH TT)	218
APPENDIX N: EXTERIOR VIEW OF THE AUC CONFERENCE	222
APPENDIX O: CHAMBER OF THE PAP	223
APPENDIX P: ORGANOGRAM OF THE PAP	224

List of Tables

<i>Table 1: Linguistic features of ST and TT</i>	47
<i>Table 2: Language errors</i>	48
<i>Table 3: Linguistic features of ST and TT</i>	62
<i>Table 4: Language errors</i>	63
<i>Table 5: Linguistic features of ST and TT</i>	74
<i>Table 6: Language errors</i>	75
<i>Table 7: Linguistic features of ST and TT</i>	86
<i>Table 8: Language errors</i>	87
<i>Table 9: Linguistic features of ST and TT</i>	97
<i>Table 10: Language errors</i>	98
<i>Table 11: Respondents' number of years working as Translators and Interpreters</i>	102
<i>Table 12: Respondents' number of years with the AU</i>	103
<i>Table 13: Respondents' field of specialisation</i>	104
<i>Table 14: Members of staff of the Documentation Unit</i>	109
<i>Table 15: Translators and/or Interpreters at the PAP</i>	117
<i>Table 16: Staff of DCMP</i>	118

List of Charts

<i>Chart 1: Respondents' level of qualification</i> _____	104
<i>Chart 2: Do translators keep closer to the ST or produce a more fluent translation?</i> _____	105
<i>Chart 3: Dissemination of information</i> _____	106

List of Abbreviations

ACLAN:	African Academy of Languages
AEC:	African Economic Community
AU:	African Union
AUC:	African Union Commission
CEA:	Communauté Économique Africaine
DCMP:	Directorate of Conference Management and Publications
EU:	European Union
EC:	European Commission
IMF:	International Monetary Fund
MP:	Member of Parliament
NATO:	North Atlantic Treaty Organisation
NGO:	Non-Governmental Organisation
OAU:	Organization of African Unity
OECD:	Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development
PAP:	Pan-African Parliament
SL:	Source Language
SPSS:	Statistical Package for Social Sciences
ST:	Source Text
TT:	Target Text
TA:	Target Audience
UN:	United Nations
UNESCO:	United Nations Science and Culture Organization

1. CHAPTER ONE: BACKGROUND INFORMATION

1.1. *Introduction*

Translation plays an important role in the life of international organisations. The significance of translation is further evidenced by the strategic place it occupies in the life of the African Union (AU), particularly the African Union Commission (AUC) and the Pan-African Parliament (PAP). This is because, increasingly, the AUC and the PAP rely on translation for their operations as it is fundamental to intercultural communication among the 54 Member States¹ of the continental body. It is therefore no surprise that the Translation Departments of the AUC and the PAP are as old as the institutions themselves. For example, the Translation Department of the PAP was established in 2004, the same year the PAP came into being. It is against this background that this introductory chapter, and the research as a whole, intends to explore the practice of translation in the AU, especially at the AUC and the PAP. Put simply, this research highlights the translation departments of these two international institutions with the view to understanding how the work of these Departments goes to the very heart of the activities of the two institutions. In the *Introduction to Translating Into Success*, Sprung observes that international organisations such as the European Commission, the International Monetary Fund (IMF), and “other international bodies are among the largest employers of translators and language services in the world” (2000: xvi). How true is this perspective about the AU? Is the AU employing the largest number of translators and interpreters on the continent? How many are there? What are their profiles? How do they go about their work? It therefore follows logic to explore the practice of the profession in the two organs of the AU so that practical answers will be provided to the questions raised above.

Sprung further remarks that: “[s]mart companies understand that translation is a strategic imperative” (2000: xv). In the same vein, Joscelyne writes that: “[t]he production of knowledge (almost totally embodied in documents) is the organization’s end purposes, and it takes a

¹ Member States is written as such in all AU documents consulted by the researcher (see Appendices F and M p 1 respectively).

discursive form, packaged for human (rather than, for example, machine) understanding” (Joscelyne, 2000: 84).

From the perspectives above, it may be said that the Translation Departments of the AUC and the PAP are no exceptions to the rule. For example, documents produced by the following Commissions and Directorates: Political Affairs, Social Affairs, Trade and Industry, Economic Affairs, Peace and Security, Infrastructure and Energy, Human Resources, Science and Technology, Rural Economy and Agriculture, as well as those produced at other Committee meetings, are translated and interpreted by translators and/or interpreters² of the AUC. Similarly, documents produced by the 10 committees and other sections, departments and units of the PAP, as well as meetings such as the Speakers’ Conference, are also translated and interpreted by translators and/or interpreters of the legislative body of the AU. Clearly, this shows how strategic translation is as far as the smooth running of these two organs of the AU is concerned. This is consistent with Joscelyne’s remark about the Translation Department of the Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) to the effect that “... the organization’s knowledge-producing function intersects with its foundational multilinguality, at the point of intersection stands the Translation Division” (Joscelyne, 2000: 84-85). Therefore, the same can be said about the Translation Departments of these two organs of the AU.

Along the same lines, in an analytical essay on translation quality assessment models entitled *Translation Quality Assessment: Where Can Theory and Practice Meet?* Lauscher (2000)³ argues that: “[m]ore people use translations than ever, and more people than ever make (or try to make) a living from translation” (2000: 149). Lauscher observes, with quotations from like-minded translation scholars, that gradually, it seems translation is developing from a “profession of last

² The phrases “translators” and “translators and/ or interpreters” will be used interchangeably throughout the study because some translators double up as interpreters, particularly at the PAP.

³ Suzanne Lauscher’s essay entitled ‘Translation Quality Assessment: Where can Theory and Practice Meet?’ in the Special issue of *The Translator: Studies in Intercultural Communication*, underscores the growing interest in “translating and translations in a globalised world”. However, for the scholar, in spite of the increased interest within translation studies circles to provide orientation for translation quality assessment (TQA), academic input in this regard leaves too much to be desired (2000: 149).

resort” (Inglis, 1998) into a “healthy, booming, and extremely profitable sector of the economy ” (Inglis, 1998: 43, Bonthron, 1998: 13, cited in Lauscher, 2000: 149).

For his part, Sprung provides empirical evidence about the growth of the profession of translation worldwide:

The world’s population of translators is flourishing. According to a study for the European Commission, there are practically 100,000 people translating professionally in Western Europe. A separate study estimates 317,000 full- and part-time translators worldwide. Translator organizations are thriving: the American Translators Association (ATA) has 7,000 members in 58 countries—double the total of seven years ago. (Sprung, 2000: ix)

Further, Sprung observes that the language industry is undergoing a tremendous change: “[t]hese are heady times for the language industry. Riding on the wave of globalisation, companies are finding that to sell beyond their borders, they must communicate in their customers’ language” (2000: ix). From the perspective above, it may be particularly interesting to know why Sprung places a special emphasis on language. To some extent, Sprung’s insight may suggest that in this globalised economy, in addition to translation which plays a very important role in international business, multinationals also have to adapt their products and services to suit local tastes (target culture) in order to succeed in the marketplace. Similarly, in the Foreword to *Translating into Success*, Anobile (2000) writes that: “[t]he transformations in the language industry following the groundswell of globalized trade are nothing short of a revolution. In under 10 years, the translation and software-localization business have evolved from a cottage industry into the global business imperative” (2000: vii). Anobile further remarks that the European Commission estimates the value of the ‘translation-services market’ at over \$ 30 billion annually and that this market is growing at a pace of between 15-18 percent annually (2000: vii).

The US Department of Labor (Occupational Outlook Handbook) indicates on its website that employment in the translation industry in the USA is “expected to grow 42 per cent from 2010 to 2020, much faster than the average for all occupations”. It further reveals that the average growth

of employment will be mostly “driven by broadening international ties and large increases in the number of non-English-speaking people in the US” (www.bls.gov).

Therefore, it may be argued that, indeed, translation can no longer be regarded as a luxury, but an imperative for all organisations, whether private or public, for profit or non-profit. However, for Anobile, the commitment to improved translation services in organisations necessarily accompanies, as he puts it, substantial ‘investment’, particularly in areas such as “language-investment strategies, language-processing technologies, translation systems, quality-assurance guidelines, and market-education. The Web is only accelerating this trend” (2000: vii).

The insights discussed above are consistent with Robinson’s opinion that:

[w]e are currently in the midst of an astonishing translation theory boom, one that has not only revolutionized the field (often literally—some of the new works are politically as well as methodologically radical) but has generated a spate of English-language theory anthologies where there were none before. (Robinson, 2002: xvii)

Similarly, Hatim observes that: “ ... the field is already booming, and new books and monographs are being produced at such a rate that it is becoming increasingly difficult to keep abreast of the way thinking about translation is evolving” (Hatim, 2001: 9). Sprung (2000), Hatim (2001), Robinson (2002)⁴, and the other scholars cited above are, without doubt, aiming at the same goal: to highlight the importance of translation in today’s modern and globalised economy. It logically follows that the profession is increasingly gaining ground on the international scene.

Furthermore, Hatim observes that: “[t]ranslation studies, the discipline which concerns itself with the theory and practice of translation, has come of age and is maturing very quickly” (2001: 3). Again, Hatim argues that: “[t]he study of translation is assuming a high profile, and what is

⁴Douglas Robinson (2002) argues in *Western Translation Theory* that translation studies are experiencing a boom. In his view, new translation programmes are coming out from every part of the world. Some of these programmes are specifically designed for the “professional training of translators and interpreters”, while others are meant for the “academic study of translation and interpreting”. However, in most cases, such programmes suit both fields.

remarkable is that this is happening not only in the traditional centres of the West, but world wide. This has heightened awareness of cross-cultural issues” (Hatim, 2001: 9).

From Hatim’s insight above, it may be fair to argue that translation is embedded in culture and can therefore not be separated from it. In this respect, Sprung observes that: “[e]ffective translation bridges the gap between cultures, not merely words” (2000: xiv). Certainly, the AU appreciates the linguistic and cultural implications of good translation. In order to bridge cultural and linguistic divides among Member States, the African Academy of Languages (ACALAN) was set up in 2001 with the view to promoting African languages on the continent. Put differently, ACALAN was established: “[f]or economic, political and socio-cultural reasons, the question of languages must be, and in fact is being considered by most of the leadership of the continent” (ACALAN website: www.acalan.org). Further, the AU clearly states in *Article 17 (Working Languages)* of the Constitutive Act of the PAP that: “[t]he working languages of the Pan-African Parliament shall, be, if possible, African languages, Arabic, English, French and Portuguese” (English ST at Appendix F: Protocol to the Treaty Establishing the African Economic Community relating to the Pan-African Parliament, p 9). As a result, the AU has been highly commended for including one African language, specifically Kiswahili, on the list of its working languages. It is expected that more indigenous languages will be brought on board in the foreseeable future⁵.

In this regard, in a paper presented at a symposium on *Language and Intellectual Capital*, Alexander (2011)⁶ underscores the importance of multilingualism: “[t]he maintenance and promotion of multilingualism is essential in the modern world because of its implications for (cultural) *diversity*, (economic) *development*, (political) *democracy*, (educational) *didactics* and (human) *dignity*.

⁵ This information came to light through a personal discussion with respondents: translators and/or interpreters of the AU during one of the sessions at the seat of the PAP.

⁶ Professor Neville Alexander presented a paper titled *The value of multilingualism for higher education in post-apartheid South Africa* at a symposium organised by the University of the Witwatersrand under the theme: *Language and Intellectual Capital* at the University of the Witwatersrand from 9-10 November 2011.

It logically follows from the insights above that international organisations in general, particularly the AU, have no option but to focus on languages because if managed and used in an effective and efficient manner: “[e]ffective and efficient linguistic communication can serve only to establish and reinforce economically beneficial relationships; language is the vehicle for the transfer of knowledge, but this transfer is conditional upon the efficiency of communication” (Djité, 2008: 140). It may, therefore, be argued here that as cross-cultural communicators, translators and/or interpreters, especially those working at both the AUC and the PAP, are expected to manipulate languages professionally in the translation process in order to ensure effective communication.

1.2. *Research Objectives*

The objectives and rationale of the study are stated below.

1.2.1. *Aim of the study*

As indicated above, translation has become an important strategic objective in the smooth running of international institutions. This study therefore asks the following questions: How is translation practised at the AUC and the PAP? What place does the profession occupy in the life of these two institutions?

It is expected that this study will provide insight into the practice of translation in the two institutions. Put simply, it will establish how, as language experts, translators are able to translate documents effectively into and out of the various official languages of the AU (of which the AUC and the PAP are organs).

As part of this research, four original documents and their translations from the AUC and the PAP (two from each institution) are assessed using a new model adapted slightly from House’s (1997) revised translation quality assessment model. The two documents from the PAP are: (1) *Protocol to the Treaty establishing the African Economic Community Relating the Pan-African*

Parliament, and (2) *Oath/Solemn Declaration of Allegiance* (Rule No 9). The two official documents were made available on request by the Head of Documentation of the Parliament who, until the recent appointment of a substantive Head of Translation and Interpreting, was organising and managing all translation and interpreting activities at the PAP. The two STs are in English and are vital because they form an integral part of the Act establishing the PAP. The other two STs from the AUC are drafted in French: (3) *Projet d'Allocution du Président de la Commission, Dr Jean Ping, à la Séance d'Ouverture de la 19ème Session Ordinaire de la Conférence de l'Union Africaine- Addis Abéba, 15 juillet 2012*, and (4) *Lettre du Président*. These two source texts were selected from the website of the AUC (www.africa-union.org). Further, 2 groups each consisting of 15 translators and/or interpreters of both the AUC and the PAP including one supervisor of the PAP, making a total of 30 respondents, were included in this study. The first group of 15 respondents completed questionnaires; the second group also made up of 15 respondents of the AUC and the PAP including a supervisor of the PAP answered face-to-face interview questions (see Appendices A and B).

1.2.2. Specific objectives of the study

The specific objectives of this research are:

1. to establish how translations are produced at both the AUC and the PAP;
2. to identify the profiles of translators employed by both institutions;
3. to evaluate the quality of translated documents produced at both the Commission and the Parliament;
4. to establish if translators adhere closely to the source text or produce more natural, fluent translations.

1.3. Rationale of the Study

According to Corraza, “language is the most powerful and useful tool humans ended up developing” (2004: 32). As a result, the continental body, the AU, officially uses at least six languages, namely: Arabic, English, French, Kiswahili, Portuguese, and Spanish. Therefore, the issue of communication is at the heart of the smooth running of the two institutions because

Member States need to understand each other better. It must be emphasised that the PAP and the AUC were chosen because of a special interest in the practical aspect of translation in the AU in comparison to what occurs in other institutions such as the Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), the Secretariat of which is located in Paris (France).

Since the study of the practice of translation in the AU is the main focus of this research, it is appropriate to consider each of the five components of multilingualism from the perspective of Alexander (2011), former Director of the Project for the Study of Alternative Education in South Africa (PRAESA) and former member of the Assembly of Academicians of the African Academy of Languages, the official language planning agency of the AU.

1. Alexander (2011) observes that globally, multilingualism has become a norm to which every human society must comply. Consequently, “biocultural diversity” is essential for the survival of human beings.
2. Invariably, there are several benefits to be derived from a policy of functional multilingualism in an organisation as opposed to “a policy of dominant-language unilingualism in the workplace in multilingualism settings” (Alexander, 2011).
3. In the light of the scholar’s insight, it may be argued that “multilingualism” is, as Alexander puts it, a precious “asset” rather than a “problem” or a curse, in contrast with how it may be perceived in some circles. It is, to a larger extent, a “resource for both the academy and economic development” (Alexander, 2011).
4. For Alexander, the promotion of African languages can only be achieved through bold and ambitious policies and practices.
5. Finally, according to Alexander, any attempt at depriving a person of his or her mother tongue may be seen as a “violation of a fundamental human right and an assault on one’s dignity” (Alexander, 2011).

Alexander’s fourth point is particularly relevant to this research, because the AU must endeavour to communicate its policy-decisions, actions and success stories as well as its challenges to 54 nations scattered across the length and breadth of the continent. Therefore, the success or otherwise of this endeavour will depend greatly on the political will and commitment of the

leadership of respective Member States. It follows that on an individual country level, adequate information must be made available to its citizens.

Put differently, the information contained in translated documents in both institutions must be disseminated through effective translation into the various indigenous languages of Member States. This is because, according to Alexander: “[b]eing able to use the language(s) one has the best command of in any situation is an empowering factor and, conversely, not being able to do so is necessarily disempowering” (2011).

It might therefore be argued that translations into and out of the official languages contribute to guiding and shaping the relationships of Member States of the AU. This is very important in order that Member States can treat each other with respect and dignity, since no human institution can thrive without mutual respect among its members. It should further be pointed out that understanding among Member Countries cannot, however, be achieved without effective and efficient translation and interpreting. It is against this background that this study seeks to explore and to provide a practical insight into the practice of translation at the AUC and the PAP so that appropriate recommendations could be made in order to enhance the image of the profession further.

1.4. Outline of chapters

This research is divided into six chapters.

The first chapter highlights the main reasons behind the study of the practice of translation at the AUC and the PAP; it also presents the objectives and rationale of the study.

The second chapter, the literature review, explores new trends in the scholarly community as far as translation quality assessment, translation theories, and translation strategies are concerned.

The third chapter combines both the methodology (used in gathering the data), and the theoretical framework.

The fourth chapter deals with the assessment of four documents (STs) and their translations (TTs).

The fifth chapter contains a commentary, discussion and analysis of the findings at both institutions.

The sixth chapter draws conclusions and presents a summary of the main issues discussed in the previous chapters; it makes relevant suggestions and recommendations about how the practice of translation could be enhanced within the two institutions.

2. CHAPTER TWO: LITERATURE REVIEW & THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK

2.1. Literature Review

Translation has become the most efficient means of intercultural communication in international institutions such as the AU, particularly the AUC and the PAP. As Spolsky rightly puts it: “[t]ranslators and interpreters are the first line of defense against the problems of multilingualism” (Spolsky, 2009: 246). This is evident, according to Sprung, in the manner in which “some companies are lifting decision-making for translation and language issues to the highest levels, rather than treating it as an afterthought ... ” (2000: xv). This research explores the practice of translation in two organs of the AU mentioned above with the intention of providing a broader, practical insight into the practice of the profession in these two institutions. The literature review therefore explores a number of theoretical ideas, thoughts and experiences regarding the importance of translation in international institutions, translation quality assessment, and translation strategies.

According to Kim: “[s]ystemic functional linguists regard language as a meaning-making resource through which people interact with each other in given situational and cultural contexts” (Kim, 2009: 128). Put differently, systemic linguists are mainly concerned with the way language is manipulated in achieving meaning.

House writes that: “[l]anguage as the most important means of intercultural communication, of transmitting information and providing human bonding therefore has an overridingly important position within any culture” (House, 2009: 10). For his part, Joscelyne observes that: “[t]he continued identity and existence of international organizations, however, is largely predicated on balancing the interests of nation-state members” (Joscelyne, 2000: 83). Indeed, language, particularly translation, has sustained the interests of Member States of the AU. This is because translators and/or interpreters working in all the organs of the continental body, particularly the

AUC and the PAP have succeeded in bridging the communication gap among Member States of the AU through translation and interpreting during all meetings and conferences of the AU. Put differently, translators and interpreters help promote mutual understanding among Member States. As Sprung rightly puts it: “[c]rossing cultures and languages has become a mainstream obsession ... ” (2000: xiii).

Kelly believes that the current state of the profession of translation can be better appreciated by scrutinising “job advertisements and descriptions” in international institutions (Kelly, 2005: 25). In order to have a clearer picture of what it entails to be a translator and/or an interpreter at the AU in general, and the AUC and the PAP in particular, it is interesting to point out that at the PAP, for example, translators are, among other things, expected to:

- translate documents properly, from their source language into their target language, by ensuring the highest standard of accuracy, and by maintaining the spirit, context, quality, technical language and nuances of the original version, using precise, clear and proper terminology.

To achieve this, translators are expected to:

- check appropriate sources of reference;
- keep abreast with development in both the source and target languages by updating specific terminologies, phrases, special expressions, lexicons and acronyms in order to expand vocabulary and enhance skills;
- regularly consult colleagues, authors of texts and specialised technical dictionaries/glossaries, data banks, etc.;
- propose terminology materials for the PAP terminology. (See Appendix E- PAP: 2012 Job Advertisement Interpreter/Translator-Arabic (Regular) Ref: PAP/ADV/02/2012).

From the requirements above, it may be argued that the AU, particularly the AUC and the PAP expect to employ high calibre professionals who possess language as well as translation skills. They are further expected to demonstrate fast and perfect understanding, according to Kelly, of the background knowledge (facts, terminology, language conventions) of both source and target languages in order to produce professional translations, “even in less widely known fields” (Kelly, 2005: 26).

Again, translators and/or interpreters in both institutions are expected to be familiar with research tools so as to have a full grasp of research strategies. It therefore appears that translators in both the AUC and the PAP are high profile professionals. Put simply, much is expected of them, particularly regarding qualifications, professionalism and personal attitudes and skills. This is because, from the requirements stated above, translators in both institutions are held to rigorous professional standards. Along similar lines, Pym argues that any professional translator must “know a good deal about grammar, rhetoric, terminology, world knowledge, common sense and strategies for getting paid correctly, but the specifically translational part of their practice is strictly neither linguistic, common nor commercial” (Pym, 1992: 281). From Pym’s perspective, the ultimate goal of translation goes beyond linguistic, common and commercial considerations; it is the ability of the translator to generate and select “between alternative texts” (1992: 281). Also, Renfer argues that translators need “maximum proficiency in the target language as well as in-depth understanding of the source language, along with a thorough grasp of the subject matter treated” (Renfer, 1992: 173). According to Renfer, translators are expected to keep abreast of latest sources of information in order to broaden their horizons as far as a particular task is concerned.

With respect to translation quality assessment, which is part of this research, Maier argues that “... the growing demand for translations in such fields as technology and business is giving rise not only to a demand for increasingly specialized translations but also to a need for more nuanced and more explicit methods of determining value” (Maier, 2000: 137). For Maier, this process of determining value is known as evaluation or assessment depending on the school of thought to which a scholar belongs.

Similarly, Lauscher remarks that: “[t]he growing importance of translating and translations in a globalized world has turned translation quality and translation quality assessment into topics of public interest” (Lauscher, 2000: 149). Further, she comments that: “[p]ractical efforts to grasp translation quality and make it operational for practical purposes often focus on developing a catalogue of criteria for a ‘good’ translation” (2000: 150). Further, Lauscher observes that ultimately, these efforts lead to “the establishment of a conclusive list applicable to all

translations, and the criteria mentioned typically refer to the correct language use in terms of the target language system” (Schmitt, 1998, cited in Lauscher, 2000: 150). Consequently, Lauscher remarks that: “[o]nce that definitive list has been created, it is assumed, it should be possible to make prescriptive judgments about individual translations being ‘good’ or ‘bad’ ” (2000: 150).

It may therefore be argued that these approaches to translation quality assessment have, to a large extent, enriched translation quality with a wealth of new insights. However, it must be pointed out that, at the same time, these attempts by translation scholars have also provided fertile ground for conflict, disagreement and competition among translation scholars as evidenced by the number of available models or approaches to translation quality assessment.

Lauscher suggests that the ‘lists’ of criteria set by translation scholars in determining translation quality “are not sufficient for determining translation quality in a professional setting, where quality seems to be dependent on a variety of very diverse factors” (Bontrone, 1998, cited in Lauscher, 2000: 150). One is therefore tempted to ask how should translation quality be determined? It is particularly important here to provide insight into what translation quality means in the first instance. Zequan⁷ observes that “what has long constituted the core and co-current concern of all debates in translation studies is what should be held as *the* criteria for translation quality assessment” (Zequan, 2003: 2).

In *Meaning-oriented assessment of translations*, Kim remarks that: “[o]ne of the critical issues in the field of translation assessment is a lack of a systematic criteria that can be used universally to assess translations” (Bassnett-McGuire, 1997, Hönig, 1998, Sager, 1989, cited in Kim, 2009: 123). The lack of systematic criteria, according to Bowker, may be explained by the fact that translation quality assessment itself is by nature subjective (Bowker, 2000: 183). Other translation scholars acknowledge the fact that quality assessment is a complicated area of

⁷ Liu Zequan is Associate Professor in English Language Teaching at the University of Yanshan in, Hebe, China. In *Register Analysis as a Tool for Translation Quality Assessment*, a revised version of a paper presented at the International Conference on Discourse and Translation at Sun Yet-San University, Guangzhou, China, Zequan observes that register analysis of linguistic texts provides us with the opportunity to discover the way language is “maneuvered to make meaning”.

translation which has received less attention in terms of research (Cao, 1996, Hatim and Mason, 1997, cited in Kim, 2009: 123-157).

Lauscher observes that in spite of the ‘increased interest’ in translation assessment, there have been widespread criticisms of the stance of academia with respect to translation quality assessment “for avoiding the subject of quality, for their inability to determine the nature of quality, and for neglecting the requirements of various evaluation scenarios” (Hönig, 1998, Bonthron, 1998, Schmitt, 1998, cited in Lauscher, 2000: 150). Lauscher writes that Holmes views translation quality assessment as an improvement of “what he perceived to be a generally arbitrary and subjective evaluation practice” (Holmes, 1998: 78, cited in Lauscher, 2000: 150).

According to Maier, other translation scholars have raised a new dimension to the notion of translation quality assessment (Zelahy, 1963, Kandler, 1963, cited in Maier, 2000: 139). According to these scholars, translation quality can be related to a wide range of issues. First and foremost, translation quality assessment must be related to the following: (a) training of translators, (b) improved working conditions of professional translators, (c) and most importantly, the issue of terminology as well as the need for increased research and collaboration among translators, especially in the area of terminology (Maier, 2000: 139). It stands to reason, from the insight above, that quality translation is not an isolated activity or phenomenon. Therefore, quality translation is a combination of indispensable factors. A subsequent question, then, is whether these criteria are able to meet the requirements of a quality translation?

In this regard, Lauscher (2000) remarks that translation quality assessment models suggested by several scholars could “become more applicable in practice if the translation process were better integrated into the evaluation procedure and if the relative nature of the evaluation procedure itself and, hence, of any prescriptive judgment were investigated more closely” (Lauscher, 2000: 150). Drawing on Ripfel (1989), Lauscher argues that ‘prescriptive judgment’ is a statement that validates the quality of the evaluation of a particular translation in a given context of evaluation. In such a context, how arbitrary and subjective could translation quality assessment be?

From the discussion above, it appears that translation quality assessment is a herculean task. Consequently, Koo and Kinds⁸ acknowledge that: “[t]ranslation quality is difficult to judge, let alone quantify ... ” (2000: 147). In order to address this issue appropriately and practically, both Koo and Kinds suggest a real and pragmatic approach, “a rigorous yet real-world approach, one that can be used easily, reliably, and consistently, often under intense time pressure (2000: 147). Similarly, Angelelli and Jacobson (2009)⁹ observe that: “[t]here is a lack of empirical research on both translator and interpreter competence and performance, and on assessing processes and products for different purposes; i.e. those of interest to industry, pedagogy and research” (2009: 4). According to Angelelli and Jacobson, embarking on assessment and testing of a particular translation, in a way helps in fulfilling a number of objectives as far as translation quality is concerned.

With respect to Lauscher’s statement mentioned above to the effect that translation scholars have developed models based on “scientific theories of translation” (2000: 151), the question then is: How scientifically-based are translation quality assessment models suggested so far by scholars?

According to House: “[e]valuating the quality of a translation presupposes a theory of translation” (1997: 1). This therefore explains why there are as many translation quality assessment models as there are translation theories. There are, among others, the anecdotal, biographical and neo-hermeneutic approaches, the response-oriented or the behavioural approaches, the text-based approaches, the post-modernist and deconstructionist approaches, the linguistically-oriented approaches and others (House, 1997: 1-27).

As indicated in section **1.2. 2**, one of the specific objectives of this study is to evaluate the quality of some translated documents produced in both the AUC and the PAP. To achieve this, a revised version of a translation quality assessment model proposed by House (1997) has been adapted slightly in this regard. This choice is informed by House’s functional approach to

⁸In “A Quality-Assurance Model for Language Projects”, a Language Tools Case, Koo and Kinds (2000) acknowledge the fact that translation quality assessment is a very difficult exercise. They recommend a user-friendly, reliable, universally-accepted approach.

⁹The two scholars have written extensively about ‘assessment’ in translation. They assert that the concept of quality is at the heart of both translation and interpreting as it helps to set a benchmark for the profession.

equivalence in translation on the level of a text. In effect, House observes that her model is, on the one hand, built on “pragmatic theories of language use, and it provides for the analysis of the linguistic-discoursal as well as the situational-cultural particularities of the source and target texts, a comparison of the two texts and the resultant assessment of their relative match” (House, 1997: 29). On the other hand, the model is built on the concept of “equivalence”. In this respect, House considers translation as being characterised by a “double-binding relationship both to its source and to the communicative conditions of the receiving linguaculture, and it is the concept of equivalence which captures this relationship” (1997: 29). As the concept of equivalence is key in translation quality assessment, it is therefore appropriate to explore House’s perspective in this respect.

2.1.2. Key features of House’s (1997) translation quality assessment model

As indicated above, the model used for evaluating the four STs and TTs from both the AUC and the PAP is slightly adapted from the revised model of translation quality assessment proposed by House (1997). Two main reasons explain the choice of the revised version of translation quality assessment model proposed by House. First, House’s (1997) model is based on what she calls “the notion of equivalence” (1997: 29). From House’s perspective, the notion of equivalence is of the utmost importance since it helps maintain ‘meaning’ between the ST and TT languages (1997: 30). As Neubert, cited by Hatim, rightly puts it:

[Meaning is] the kingpin of translation studies. Without understanding what the text to be translated means ... the translator would be hopelessly lost. This is why the translation scholar has to be a semanticist over and above everything else. By semanticist we mean a semanticist of the text, not just words, structures and sentences. The key concept for the semantics of translation is *textual meaning*. (2001: 111)

Second, according to House, the core feature of a translation is that “it is a text that is doubly bound” (1997: 24). This kind of bond is what House refers to as “equivalence relation” (1997: 24). In this regards, Neubert, cited by Hatim, observes that: “[a] translation ‘has to stand in some kind of equivalence relation to the original ...

Equivalence in translation is not an isolated, quasi-objective quality, it is a *functional concept* that can be attributed to a *particular translational situation*” (2001: 26).

To make translation evaluation easier and more effective, House makes a clear distinction between **overt** and **covert** translations. On the one hand, House argues that with respect to overt translations, “the function of the translation is to enable its readers access to the function of the original in its original linguacultural setting through another language” (1997: 29). On the other hand, House argues that **covert** translations aim at imitating “the original’s function in a different discourse frame, a different discourse world” (Edmondson, 1981, cited in House, 1997: 29). With regard to covert translations, the translator achieves equivalence through what House calls ‘a new language’ in order to establish the function the ST plays in its ‘linguacultural setting’. According to House, one of the best ways the translator is able to arrive at this important functional equivalence is through what House refers to as a **cultural filter** (1997: 29). Put simply, from House’s perspective, in a covert translation strategy, “a translation is not recognised as one” (1997: 11). In this respect, a translation appears original based on what House calls “its self-effacement and when a translation reads fluently, when it gives the appearance that it is not translated, it is rated best” (1997: 11). Consequently, House describes as a covert translation “this ‘fluent strategy’ designed to efface the translator’s intervention with the foreign text” (1997: 11). Clearly for House, this ‘fluent strategy’ is distinct and unsuitable for an overt translation where “one openly and unashamedly recognizable as a translation” (1997: 11).

Further, House’s (1997) model is based on a theory of pragmatic function and focuses primarily on contextual meaning as far as translation is concerned. Consequently, House distinguishes between three main types of “meaning”: *semantic meaning*, *pragmatic meaning* and *textual meaning* which are explained below:

Semantic meaning: House uses this term to refer to a relationship of reference or denotation. Put simply, this shows how “linguistic units” of a text are closely linked to what they refer to

(referents) in “some possible world” (1997: 30). By possible world, House means any possible imaginary world that the human mind can create and interpret. House, however, admits that there exist “semantically meaningful” words or sentences, which may not necessarily refer to anything in the actual world, for example, in science fiction (1997: 30).

Pragmatic meaning is the “illocutionary force that an utterance is said to have, i.e. the particular use of an expression on a specific occasion” (1997: 31). House therefore observes that, on the one hand, semantics deals with the relationships between signs and designates, between “words” and “things” with the element of sentences which are theoretical constructs being constructed into propositions (1997: 30). For his part, Stalnaker defines pragmatics as “... the study of linguistic acts and the contexts in which they are performed” (Stalnaker, 1973: 383). Put differently, from Stalnaker’s perspective, pragmatics concerns itself with studying language, and more particularly how this language affects directly those who use it (Stalnaker, 1973: 380). On her part, House remarks that pragmatics focuses on what binds “linguistic units” and those who use them in a specific context of communication (House, 1997: 30). Along similar lines, Leech writes that: “[s]ince pragmatics is about meaning in speech situations, we clearly cannot make any pragmatic claims about what is going on privately in someone’s head” (Leech, 1983: 34). Thomas observes that pragmatics involves “the negotiation of meaning between speaker and hearer, the context of utterance (physical, social, linguistic) and the meaning potential of an utterance” (Thomas, 1955: 22, cited in House, 1997: 30). According to House, pragmatic meaning is at the heart of the translation process because translation does not deal with sentences, but rather with utterances: “units of discourse characterised by their use-value in communication” (1997: 31). As a result, in some specific translation situations, more emphasis is placed on the pragmatic meaning of utterances rather than the semantic meaning.

Textual meaning: From House’s perspective, a text is “any stretch of language in which the individual components relate to one another and form a cohesive whole” (1997: 31). Therefore, constructing a text involves the following: “theme-rheme sequences, occurrences of pro-forms, substitutions, co-references, ellipses, anaphora” (1997: 31). Put together, all the factors mentioned above explain the actual meaning conveyed in a ST and should be preserved in the TT.

From the three aspects of meaning discussed above, House gives what she calls a “tentative” definition of translation as “the replacement of a text in the source language by a semantically and pragmatically equivalent text in the target language” (1997: 31).

House further argues that the core feature of a translated text is that it has a double connection with the original. She refers to this relationship as “doubly bound on the one hand to its source text and on the other hand to the recipient’s communicative conditions” (1997: 24). This double connected function of the translated text may be viewed as the foundation for what is known in “linguistic-textual approaches” circles as the “equivalence relation” (1997: 24). Put simply, this equivalence relation means that both ST and TT are inextricably intertwined.

Consequently, Ivir, cited by House, makes this relation quite explicit:

[e]quivalence is ... relative and not absolute, ... it emerges from the context of situation as defined by the interplay of (many different) factors and has no existence outside that context, and in particular ... it is not stipulated in advance by an algorithm for the conversion of linguistic units of L1 into linguistic units of L2. (Ivir, 1996: 155, cited in House, 1997: 25)

It appears therefore that the equivalence relation is neither an exact science nor determined outside the context of translation; rather it is looked at from within, and is dependent on several interrelated factors. In the same vein, House remarks that Koller differentiates between five main types of this equivalence relation known as the five “frames of reference” (Koller, 1992: 216, cited in House, 1997: 25). These are:

- (a) *denotative equivalence* aligns itself with the “extralinguistic referents” of the text;
- (b) *connotative equivalence* derives its name from the different connotations expressed through specific “verbalisations” throughout the text;
- (c) *text normative equivalence* refers to the usage of linguistic and textual norms specific to a given text;

(d) *pragmatic equivalence*: Because it is tailored to suit the actual expectations of the target audience, it is purposely produced to “fulfil the communicative function” of the translation;

(e) *formal-aesthetic equivalence* refers to the kind of equivalence which is closely linked to certain characteristics of the original text: “aesthetic, formal and idiosyncratic” (1997: 25).

As translation is an activity involving decision-taking, House admits that not all five types of equivalence mentioned above may be used at the same time during the translation process. From a practical point of view, using these five types of equivalence simultaneously may be a very difficult decision to be made by a translator. However, s/he has the option to decide which of the five types suits best a given translation activity.

From House’s (1997) perspective, in order to conduct a credible translation quality assessment, an evaluator must be able to define what she calls the “function” of the text (1997: 32). In effect, drawing on the work of Halliday and Hassan (1989: 17), House (1997: 32) focuses on two main functions of a text: the *ideational* and *interpersonal* functions. An *ideational* text mainly expresses content. Put differently, by its nature, an *ideational* text provides an objective and informative message. Generally, an *ideational* text uses conventional language; its specific purpose is to provide information, but not to arouse emotions on the part of the audience or addressee. As a result, a translator is expected to match an *ideational* text with a *covert* translation strategy. This is because the main task of the translator is to ensure that the translation is as informative as possible. “[c]onsequently, the function of a *covert* translation is to recreate, reproduce or represent in the translation text the function the original has in its linguacultural framework and discourse world” (House, 1997: 114). Interestingly, in a *covert* translation, the translator applies what House terms a *cultural filter*. What House means by *cultural filter* are the means by “which shifts and changes along pragmatic parameters (e.g. the marking of the social relationship between author and reader) are conducted” (House, 1997: 29-30).

An *interpersonal* text does not only inform, but aims at arousing emotions on the part of the addressee or the audience. As a result, fiction (plays, comedies and dialogue) and non-fiction

(religious sermons, political speeches) may be grouped under the umbrella of *interpersonal* literature. In this respect, House observes that: “[i]n its interpersonal function, language acts as an expression of a speaker’s attitudes and his influence on the attitudes and behaviour of the hearer” (1997: 35). In other words, language may be used as a means of shaping peoples’ attitudes and behaviours. At the same time, language helps serve as a channel through which the relationship between the speaker and the addressee, as well as the expression of social roles such as communication roles are conveyed (1997: 35).

As Hatim rightly puts it:

[f]rom this perspective, details relating to conveying information, ideas or experience (i.e. *ideational* meanings) and to using language to establish particular relationships (i.e. *interpersonal* meanings) form an important part of source and target ‘textual profile’. Equivalence is established on the basis of

- the linguistic and situational particularities of source and target texts;
- a comparison of the two texts;
- an assessment of their relative match. (Hatim, 2001: 92)

In *Moving across Languages and Cultures in Translation as Intercultural Communication*, House remarks that: “[i]n translation a text in one language, the original, is reproduced in another language while keeping the ‘meaning’ equivalent” (House, 2009: 12). As a result, House poses a translation equation: “ ... a translation is equivalent with its original if it has a function which is equivalent” (2009: 12). In this context, one is tempted to ask what the “function” of a text really means? According to House, the function of a text is defined in relation to its usefulness in a particular situation. In other words, what House means by “function” is a core concept of language; “function” transcends the “notion of mere use of language” (House, 1997: 32). In this context, according to House, the notion of function “presupposes that there are elements in any text which – given appropriate analytical tools – can reveal that text’s function” (1997: 32). This is particularly important, especially in the context of the AU, because translators in both institutions are not expected to produce word-for-word translations but more pragmatic translations, which take into account the linguistic expectations of the 54 Member States. In

other words, translators in both institutions are expected to “manoeuvre language to make meaning” (Zequan, 2003).

With regard to *overt* and *covert* strategies to be used by translators, House answers the translation equation here: “[e]quivalence I take to be the fundamental criterion of translation quality. Thus, an adequate translation text is a pragmatically and semantically equivalent one” (House, 1997: 31-32). However, in an *overt* translation, the source text is linked in a special way to the source audience and its culture. Put simply, in an *overt* translation: “[t]he source text is specifically directed at source culture addressees but at the same time points beyond the source language community because it is, independent of its source language origin, also of potential general human interest” (1997: 66). Consequently, House distinguishes between two types of source texts: *overt* historically-linked source texts and *overt* timeless source texts. *Overt* historically-linked source texts, according to House, refer, on the one hand, to a specific context in which “a precisely specified source language audience is/was being addressed” (1997: 66). On the other hand, *overt* timeless source texts are “those transcending as works of art and aesthetic creations a distinct historical meaning while, of course, always necessarily displaying period and culture-specificity because of the status of the addresser, who is a product of his time and culture” (1997: 66).

House (1997) also argues that, with respect to the comparison of both source and target texts within the framework of her model of translation quality assessment, it is quite a difficult decision for the evaluator to make as to what constitutes a “good” or a “bad” translation (1997: 118). To a large extent, House’s (1997) model provides the opportunity for analysing a number of assessment situations that would, in any individual circumstance, not be fully predicted. This is because, invariably, any kind of assessment will depend on a number of factors which in the view of the scholar “condition social evaluative judgments” (1997: 118).

Having defined at length the meaning of overt and covert translations above, it is worthwhile exploring which of these two strategies discussed above are used by translators at the AUC and the PAP.

In an article entitled *Tactics and Strategies in Translation and Interpreting*, Gambier writes that “strategy” is a slippery term in Translation Studies, because in many instances, strategies are to mean “procedures, techniques, changes, shifts, methods” (2009: 63-82). Understandably, to some extent, strategy may be defined from the perspective of the school of thought to which a particular translation scholar belongs. In other words, this is dependent on whether a particular scholar is a proponent of a “comparative literature, stylistics, discourse analysis, or psycholinguistics” school of thought (2009: 63-82). Consequently, two definitions of strategies, which, without doubt, fit the purposes of this research are those given by Lörcher: “[t]ranslation strategies have been, and are, considered a kind of operation in the translator’s mind while translating” (Lörcher, 1991: 76, cited in Gambier, 2009: 63-82).

Lörcher’s second concise definition of strategy is “a potentially conscious procedure for the solution of a problem which an individual is faced with when translating a text segment from one language to another” (Lörcher, 1991: 76, cited in Gambier, 2009: 63-82). In the same respect, Leppihalme observes that: “[t]o speak of a translator’s strategies means focusing on him or her as a problem-solver and decision maker, so that the question is not only what the translator did but also why he or she chose to do it” (Leppihalme, 1997: 24-30, 78-80).

On his part, Chesterman remarks that strategies “are ways in which translators seek to conform to norms. Note: not to achieve equivalence, but simply to arrive at the best version they can think of, what they regard as the optimal translation” (Chesterman, 1997: 88).

In this regard, Gambier proposes, among others, three strategies: *shifting between languages*, *solving a problem*, and *translation working process* (Gambier, 2000: 63-82).

Shifting between languages

Gambier observes that Vinay and Darbelnet’s (1958) seven procedures (*procédés techniques de traduction*) are a good example of the translator making decisions during the translation process, particularly with respect to the languages into which s/he translates.

Again, Chesterman (1997) distinguishes between “comprehension and production strategies” (1997: 92). On the one hand, comprehension strategies aim at analysing “the source text and the whole nature of the translation commission; they are inferencing strategies, and they are temporally primary in the translation process” (1997: 92). On the other hand, production strategies are dependent on the creativity of the translator. They “are in fact the results of various comprehension strategies; they have to do with how the translator manipulates the linguistic material in order to produce an appropriate target text” (Chesterman, 1997: 92). These strategies describe the types of text-linguistic behaviour—what the translator does in the process of producing a target text at the syntactic, semantic or pragmatic level (Gambier, 2009: 63-82).

Solving a problem

As mentioned above, Gambier (2009) argues that strategies are some sort of “operation in the translator’s mind when translating” (Lörscher, 1991, Jääskeläinen, 1993, cited in Gambier, 2009: 63-82). However, from a practical point of view, strategy, according to Gambier, is no longer regarded as a “constitutive element for a general translation theory” (2009: 63-82). Rather, strategy is viewed as a “tool to tackle the possible problem” the translator encounters while translating, as well as a “concept”, which helps refer to the translation as “a decision process”. Since translation is always a process through which a decision is made by the translator, it appears therefore that this second perspective about translation strategy is the most pragmatic and likely to be used at both the AUC and the PAP. As regards this, for Gambier, translation scholars appreciate strategies from different perspectives. Depending on the context, it may be a process which the translator has full control of or otherwise, or a process the translator is very conscious of or which comes about mechanically. Therefore, in some specific contexts, translators are torn between a ‘more specific level’ (how to solve local problems) strategy and a ‘more general and abstract level strategy’ (what is going on in the mind of the translator, the “black box”). As a result, Gambier observes that on a more specific level, what really matter are the careful and conscious decisions the translator makes as opposed to the other processes which happen almost mechanically.

As a result, the concept “problem” has been treated as a “pre-conceived notion”. For example, according to Gambier, translating metaphors or compound nouns in English requires certain strategies which have been made to suit the context. Scholars attempt to determine what translators themselves consider as “problematic” with regard to a specific original text or issues related to the activity of translating as well as what solutions they are able to suggest, which do not occur mechanically but through a careful and meticulous decision process. In this context, for Gambier, the concept “problem” is, on the one hand, an issue related to “data” about the translating process. On the other hand, the translator’s own abilities to solve problems as and when they arise in the translation process are key as far as translation competence is concerned.

Translation working process

Other issues worth considering in relation to strategy are the various stages of the work of the translator. According to Gambier, this means determining what resources and procedures are at the disposal of the translator when s/he deals with a particular translation (2009: 63-82). There are goal-oriented strategies otherwise known as conscious actions, which are aimed at making the translation task much easier (Lörscher, 2002, cited in Gambier, 2009: 63-82). In this context, Gambier suggests the following important translation sub-strategies:

- *comprehension strategies before translating*: Organisational strategies, reading strategies, text-analysis strategies, search strategies for terminological mining and information retrieval, the consultation of authorities in the field, etc.;
- *production strategies in the translation process*: Writing up a draft, solving local problems, finalising the translated text, revision strategies and survival strategies;
- *after translating*: This strategy deals specifically with the way the final translated document is presented and distributed; and how it is delivered to the client (the one who has requested the translation).

Having discussed the concepts of equivalence and meaning in relation to translation and some key features of House’s (1997) translation quality assessment model, the next section explores the concept of sampling in social research.

In any type of research, the researcher will not be able to study the entire population s/he is interested in. Rather, the researcher “will select a subset, or **sample**, of the population. But the researcher can use the results obtained from the sample to make generalizations about the entire population *only if the sample is truly representative of the population*” (Leedy and Ormrod, 2013: 206-207). In the same respect, Shipman observes that: “[r]esearch is always based on samples whether carefully selected for a survey or hastily picked as an illustration for an argument” (Shipman, 1988: 52). Silverman writes: “ ... a sample is basic to survey research” (Silverman, 2000: 95). It logically follows that in social research involving data collection, the researcher always relies on people who are ready and willing to answer the research questions. As a result, a sample is a representative of the population the researcher intends studying. According to Shipman, “such samples are frequently the basis for generalisation about the population from which they have been drawn” (Shipman, 1988: 52). According to Shipman, sampling “is a systematic way of choosing a group small enough to study and large enough to be representative” (1988: 52). It must be emphasised that in social research, there are several sampling techniques: probability, purposive, theoretical, structured and stratified.

In this research, the purposive sampling technique was used. This was to ensure that translators and/or interpreters in both the PAP and the AUC exhausted the various questions posed in the questionnaires in order that the main objectives of the study would be achieved (see Appendices A & B). As indicated in section **1.2. 1** above, the phrase “translators and/or interpreters” is used in the research because it is possible for one person to work as a translator and an interpreter. With respect to this study, some translators double up as translators and interpreters, particularly at the PAP.

Shipman remarks that two forms of samples are used with respect to social sciences. According to Shipman: “[t]he judgement, purposive or quota samples are all variations on the method of selecting individuals or groups who are seen to be representative of the target population” (1988: 53). In other words, by using this technique, the researcher chooses the population size that best suits the objectives of his or her research. “[i]t is purposive because the choice serves the objectives of the investigation” (Shipman, 1988: 54). This leads us to the theoretical framework of the study.

2.2. *Theoretical Framework*

The purpose of this section is to provide a theoretical and methodological foundation for this research about the practice of translation at the AUC and the PAP. To this end, the first and second parts discuss the notion of *textual profile* in relation to text analysis along eight main dimensions: “*Dimensions of Language User*”, “*Dimensions of Language Use*” and what are referred to as linguistic features of a text by House (1997) in her revised model of translation quality assessment. The linguistic features of a text: *field, tenor, mode, register, genre and language* and the eight dimensions mentioned above are intimately intertwined as evidenced by the way they are used interchangeably in the analysis of translations in House’s (1997) translation quality assessment model. Consequently, these linguistic parameters cannot be separated from each other. Finally, the theoretical framework explores views of a number of scholars in relation to the theoretical and methodological framework of this study, particularly the purpose and aim of a translation.

House (1977) argues that before any qualitative statements are made about a given translated text, the evaluator or translation researcher would have to make a comparison of the TT with what House refers to as the *textual profile* of the original text. This is because a *textual profile* provides the condition (the norm) for judging how appropriate the TT is (House, 1981: 51). What House actually means by *textual profile* is what she terms a full analysis of texts aimed at helping the evaluator convey the information they contain clearly and accurately. By so doing, the evaluator or translation researcher is able to divide such texts according to the linguistic features they display and to distribute them into eight different dimensions: The first three dimensions fall under “*Dimensions of Language User*” and consist of *geographical origin, social class, and time*. The remaining five dimensions under “*Dimensions of Language Use*” are made up of *medium, participation, social role relationship, social attitude, and province*. It must be emphasised that the eight dimensions mentioned above and the six linguistic features of a text are inextricably connected; they are used interchangeably in the process of analysis of texts in House’s (1997) translation quality assessment model. For instance, social power and social distance, which are grouped under the dimensions of *language use*, particularly social role

relationship and social attitude, are also found under *tenor* (House, 1997: 109). Similarly, *tenor* fits under *social class* under *dimensions of language user*. Again, *field*, which according to House focuses on “the social action that is taking place, it captures what is going on” (1997: 108), fits perfectly under *province* still under *dimensions of language use*. Further, *mode*, which deals with both the channel-spoken and written (which can be ‘simple’, e.g., written to be read, or ‘complex’ written to be spoken as if not written), corresponds to *medium* under the *dimensions of language use* (House, 1997: 109). Consequently, as this new model is adapted slightly from House’s model, the eight dimensions of *language user* and *language use*, the linguistic features of a text and the ten criteria set in the language category have been incorporated into the new model for the assessment of the four STs and TTs selected from both the AUC and the PAP. As House rightly puts it:

[t]he situational dimensions and their linguistic correlates are then considered to be the means by which the text’s function is realized, i.e., the function of a text is established as a result of an analysis of the text along the eight situational dimensions as outline above. (1997: 42)

Also, House observes that any discourse will present one of these two features: *theme* or *rheme* (1997: 44). As the name suggests, the theme may be referred to as the subject matter (the central idea), which may be fully understood and digested by the addressee as the text unfolds. *Rheme* deals with the new information to be made available by the author or source of the discourse.

Further, from House perspective: “[w]ord order is the primary formal means of realizing the theme-rheme distribution: ‘in normal’ unmarked speech, the theme precedes the *rheme* (Mathesius ‘objective position’), in emotive speech, however, the *rheme* precedes the theme (‘subjective position’)” (Mathesius, 1971, cited in House, 1997: 44).

According to House, her quality assessment model (1997) makes the evaluation of texts quite simple and easy because the *textual profile* of the original text serves as the yardstick for the comparison of the *textual profile* of the translated text. According to House:

... using the same dimensional scheme at the same level of delicacy, and the degree to which its textual profile and function match or do not match the source text's is the degree to which the translation text is more or less adequate in quality. (1997: 42-43)

Following is a brief explanation of the eight dimensions used in the assessment of the four STs and TTs.

“Dimensions of Language User”

1. *Geographical origin* helps identify the actual source of the discourse (message). This may be possible by means of a specific dialect or language of a particular geographical location.
2. *Social class* indicates the social position of the writer or source of the message.
3. *Time* aims at identifying what makes the target text current or ‘archaic’. Put simply, the main purpose is to identify specific words and expressions used in the text that may possibly be considered contemporary or emanating from an earlier period.

“Dimensions of Language Use”

1. *Medium*: This dimension may be written (text) or spoken (speech); it may also be *simple or complex*. Drawing on the work of Gregory, House terms this the “delicate distinctions suggested by Gregory” (Gregory, 1967: 189, cited in House, 1997: 40). House had to refine the *complex medium* category because translation quality assessment is mainly based on a written discourse. The distinctions are: *written to be spoken as if not written, written to be spoken, written not necessarily to be spoken, written to be read as if not heard*, and others. These distinctions become necessary, especially on account of different categories of language used throughout a given text as they may pose a few challenges to the translator. However, the *simple medium* may be grouped under one category: *written to be read, or spoken to be heard*.

In other words, on the one hand, *simple medium* refers to a situation “where language stays within one category, i.e. ‘spoken to be heard’ or ‘written to be read’ (in the sense of ‘not read aloud’ ” (House, 1997: 38-39). On the other hand, *complex medium* concerns itself with, for instance, language which “is written to be spoken, with possible further subclassification” (House, 1997: 38-39).

2. *Participation* focuses on the level of participation of the recipient of the message or the addressee. Participation may also be either *simple* or *complex*. According to House (1997): “[a] text may be either a ‘simple’ monologue or dialogue, or a ‘complex’ mixture involving, in an overt ‘monologue’, various means of indirect participation elicitation and indirect addressee involvement manifest linguistically ... ” (1997: 40).

3. *Social role relationship* deals with the relationship between the source of a discourse and the target audience or addressee (s). This relationship may be considered “either symmetrical (marked by the existence of solidarity or equality) or asymmetrical (marked by the presence of some kind of authority)” (1997: 41). The kind of authority being referred to here may be likened, for example, to the relationship between an employer and employees or that of a professor and students.

4. *Social attitude* focuses primarily on how close or distant, how formal or informal is the relationship between the addresser and the addressee. Under this category, House acknowledges and discusses the five main different classifications made by Joos (1961). They are *frozen*, *formal*, *consultative*, *casual*, and *intimate*. According to House, among all the others, the consultative style appears to be the ‘most neutral’. House further argues that with respect to consultative style, “ ... the addresser does not assume that he can leave out certain parts of his message – which he might be able to do in a socially closer relationship where much of the message is ‘understood’ ” (House, 1997: 41). According to House, both consultative and casual styles are used in addressing “public information” (1997: 41). However, intimate style does not feature in public information. Rather, it is the “language used between people who are personally close to each other with a maximum shared background information being available” (1997: 41). Regarding formal style, the involvement or participation of the recipient (addressee) of a

message is to a large extent not mentioned. This differentiates formal style from consultative style: “[f]ormal texts are well-structured, elaborate, logically sequenced, and strongly cohesive. They clearly demonstrate advance planning” (1997: 41- 42). With respect to frozen style, House remarks that like the intimate style, it appears to be “the most formal premeditated, often, ‘literary’ style. Frozen texts may be consummate products of art meant for education and edification of the readers ... ” (Joos, 1961, cited in House, 1997: 42).

5. *Province*: Following Crystal and Davy, House defines *province* in a broader sense of the term to cover not only the profession and occupation of the source of the message “but also to the field or topic of the text in its widest sense of ‘area of operation’ of the language activity as well as details of the text production as they can be deduced from the text production ... ” (Crystal and Davy, 1969, cited in House, 1997: 42).

The eight dimensions: “*Dimensions of Language User*” and *Dimensions of Language Use*” discussed above and the six linguistic features of a text: *field*, *tenor*, *mode*, *register*, *genre* and *language* are used interchangeably in House’s (1997) revised translation quality assessment model.

Following is the explanation of the six linguistic features of a text which overlap with the eight dimensions in House’s (1997) translation quality assessment model.

1. *Field*: According to House, *field* deals with “the social action that is taking place, it captures ‘what is going on’, i.e., the field of activity, the topic, the content of the text or its subject matter” (1997: 108). As indicated above, *field* corresponds to *province* under dimensions of *language user* (House, 1997: 42).

2. *Tenor* refers to “who is taking part, to the nature of the participants, the addresser and the addressees, and the relationship between them in terms of social power and social distance”, as well as the ‘degree of emotional charge’ in the relationship between the addresser and addressee (s) ... ” (Halliday, 1978, cited in House, 1997: 108-109). Consequently, the choice of the language used is informed by the kind of relationship that exists between the addresser and the

addressee (s). For example, *tenor* comes under social role relationship and social attitude under dimensions of *language use* (House, 1997: 41). *Tenor* also fits under social class (1997: 108-109).

3. *Mode* deals with “both the channel-spoken and written (which can be ‘simple’, e.g., written to be read, or ‘complex’, e.g., written to be spoken as if not written), and the degree to which potential or real participation is allowed for between the interlocutors” (House, 1997: 109). Again, *mode* fits perfectly under *medium* under dimensions of *language use* (House, 1997: 40).

4. *Register* is “functional language variation, refers to what the context-of-situation requires as appropriate linguistic realization in a text” House (1997: 105). Martin, cited by House, argues that “register and genre are both semiotic systems realized by language, a special kind of semiotic system” (Martin, 1993, cited in House, 1997: 106). House writes that: “[t]he relationship between genre and register is then such that generic choices are realized by register choices, which in turn are realized by linguistic choices that make up linguistic structures in the instantiation of a text” (House, 1997: 106-107). As linguists define *register* from a broader perspective with sub-classifications, consequently, register can also be classified under social role relationship and social attitude found under dimensions of *language use* (House, 1997: 106).

5. *Genre*: According to House: “[w]e are able to categorize texts into particular genres on the basis of what we know about their intertextuality and the social uses of texts, i.e., genre is taken as the basis on which we are able to classify texts as of the same kind” (House, 1997: 107). “... genres result from social identifications in terms of use, source or function, and registers are the result of decisions inside a genre choice concerning field, mode and tenor” (1997: 106). Couture, cited by House, observes that “genres are completable structured texts, while registers represent more generalizable stylistic choices” (Couture, 1986, cited in House, 1997: 106). As *genre* and *register* are intimately related, going by House’s definition: “genre is a socially established category characterized in terms of occurrence of use, source and a communicative purpose or any combination of these” (1997: 107). Consequently, *genre* can be put under social role relationship and social attitude under dimensions of *language use* (House, 1997: 107).

6. *Language*: In the context of this study, it refers to the type of language used in both STs and TTs. In other words, it deals with words or expressions that will help classify the language as old or contemporary with respect to the assessed texts. Citing Martin, House observes that “register and genre are both semiotic systems realized by language, a special kind of semiotic system” (Martin, 1989, cited in House, 1997: 106). *Language* therefore can be considered part of the register and genre analyses (House, 1997: 105-107). As far as this study is concerned, *medium*: spoken or written language classified under dimensions of *language use* (House, 1997: 40), can fit under *language*. Further, *language* can also be classified under *Geographical origin* given that, for example, a regional dialect fits under it.

As indicated earlier, the new model used for assessing the quality of four STs and their translations produced at the AUC and the PAP was adapted slightly from the revised translation quality assessment model proposed by House (1997). However, some key features of models developed by Fenderico (1984) and the Localisation Industry Standard Association (LISA-1995), especially with regard to major errors, such as punctuation errors, omissions of titles or names, shifts or mistranslations, have been incorporated into this new model. This is to make the slightly adapted model from House’s (1997) more comprehensive (see 3.7 above). Unlike the six linguistic features of a text and the ten criteria set in the language category provided in two tables, the eight *dimensions* of *language user* and *language use* are not for space constraints. However, they feature prominently in the analyses of the four STs and TTs.

It must be emphasised that this translation assessment is also carried out to test translation and language competences. For this purpose, the assessment will draw on Pym’s definition of translation competence, which according to Pym may be a combination of two skills:

1. The ability to generate a target-text series of more than one viable term (target text1, target text2 ... target text n) from a source text.
2. The ability to select only one target text from this series, quickly and with justified confidence, and to propose this target text as a replacement of source text for a specified purpose and reader. (Pym, 1992: 281)

Pym further argues that the combination of these two skills represent “ ... a specifically translational competence to the extent that their union concerns translation and nothing but translation” (1992: 281). For his part, Hatim remarks that translation competence and linguistic competence are two different notions. “[k]nowledge of grammar, rhetoric, terminology, and even commercial considerations do feature, but translation is taken strictly to be a process of generating and selecting between alternative texts” (Hatim, 2001: 169).

As meaning and equivalence are central in the translation process, particularly in the assessment of texts, Kim (2009: 132) remarks that the most important step in evaluating a translation in a systematic manner is for the evaluator to fully understand what goes into the production of a particular translated text. This is dependent on a number of factors, including the ability of the translator to analyse documents and texts in order to convey the message they contain as clearly and accurately as possible, the possession of vital skills by the translator and an excellent command of at least two languages. Further, the translator is expected to have a thorough understanding of the cultural and background knowledge of the text. According to Kim, in order to produce a translated text, the translator may have to make “choices in such a way as to convey the multi-dimensional meaning of the ST in an appropriate form of the TT. In the choice-making process, the negotiation of meaning is inevitable” (Kim, 2009: 132).

As a language expert, the translator is therefore expected to have a firm grasp of various types of meaning, some of which have been discussed above. However, since it is quite impossible for the translator to convey every aspect of meaning in the translated text because meanings vary across cultures, ‘the translation brief’ becomes a ‘compass’ which provides a clear direction to the translator in relation to the translation process.

In this respect, one pragmatic theory which provides a clear aim or purpose of a translation is the Skopos Theory which emerged in the early 1980s. A pertinent question arising with respect to this study is: What is the actual purpose or “skopos” of translation at the AUC and the PAP? Proponents of *Skopos Theory* (Reiss & Vermeer, 1984) assert that the ‘skopos’ or the actual ‘purpose of translation’ is the benchmark which should be used in measuring the quality of a translation. “[t]he theory holds that the way the target text eventually shapes up is determined to

a great extent by the function, or skopos, intended for it in the target context” (Hatim, 2001: 74). Put simply, proponents of this school of thought believe that the translator should be in the position to use some translation strategies and methods with the aim of producing a translation that meets its actual functions. This is because the purpose or function which a given translation is expected to have is clearly spelt out in the ‘translation brief’. As Hatim remarks: “[S]kopos Theory subscribes to a view of communication which posits ‘feedback’ (i.e. response by the text receiver) as an essential part of any form of interaction. The reaction to the message once it is delivered indicates the extent of its success” (2001: 75). The skopos framework will therefore help address the third objective of this study, that is, whether translations in the two institutions are source or target-oriented. This is because, for Hatim: “[a]ccording to Skopos Theory, the success or failure of a translation is ultimately decided by whether it can be interpreted successfully by the target recipient in a manner that is consistent with what is expected of it” (Hatim, 2001: 75).

Clearly, the ‘translation brief’ becomes an important tool the translator relies on in choosing between an *overt* or *covert* translation strategy as suggested by House (1997).

Again, it is appropriate to explore Nida’s (1964) framework based on the “concepts of formal and dynamic equivalence, which represent one of the first approaches to defining translation quality” (Angelelli & Jacobson, 2009: 1). In effect, Nida’s (1964) framework calls for the determination of the quality of translation based on the kind of feedback it receives in the target audience. Put simply, the feedback a translation receives from the target audience should be equivalent to the response of the ST audience (Angelelli & Jacobson, 2009: 1). In the context of a further research, it would be an interesting exercise to use Nida’s framework in order to gauge the response translated documents receive in Member States of the AU.

For her part, Baker’s (1992) perspective on the formal academic training of translators will address the first specific objective of this study which is to establish the profiles of translators working for both institutions. Indeed, Baker observes that most experienced translators believe that: “[t]he ability to translate is a gift they say: you either have it or you do not, and theory (almost a dirty word in some translation circles) is therefore irrelevant to the work of a

translator” (1992: 3). The question arising therefore is: Should translators be academically-trained or not? Should theory and practice be regarded as different concepts or ‘worlds’, or should they complement each other?

Also, one of the most pragmatic and practical approaches to translation quality is the one suggested by Toury (1995). Based on *adequacy* and *acceptability*, Toury’s theoretical framework is, in many respects, relevant to this research. This is because, by *adequacy*, Toury means a translation which actually fits into the ‘norms’ of the culture of the source audience. Similarly, *acceptability* suggests that a translation must “respond to the norms of the target culture” (Toury, 1995: 1-8). Therefore, Toury’s framework will be useful in establishing if translations in both institutions are adequate from the perspective of the source culture, and at the same time acceptable in the target culture where they are expected to be used.

Furthermore, proponents of Relevance Theory, Sperber and Wilson, believe that: “[t]he principle of relevance applies without exception: every act of ostensive communication communicates a presumption of relevance” (1986: 162). Applied later to the context of translation, Gutt (1991) argues that as far as translation is concerned, “whatever decision the translator reaches is based on *his intuitions or beliefs* about what is relevant to his audience” (1991: 112). Gutt explains intuition in relation to what he refers to as: “our relevance-based account of faithfulness: the translation is presented by virtue of its resemblance with the original in relevant respects” (1991: 112). This is very important in the context of the AU as the work of translators and/or interpreters is seen as an act of communication geared towards communicating the ideals and policies of the AU to Member States. As Hatim remarks: “[R]elevance Theory views translation as a special instance of the wider concept of ‘communication’, and seeks to account for deeper relationships underlying complex processes like decision making and evaluation” (Hatim, 2001: 36). Consequently, the understanding of Relevance Theory by translators, especially those working for the AU, would be of the utmost importance, since it would help them take crucial decisions in the translation process that would have an impact on the success or otherwise of the translation (communication). Applied to the context of the AU, Relevance Theory will answer the following questions: What translation strategies do translators and/or interpreters use? How relevant are they in addressing communication challenges when they arise?

The following chapter mainly discusses the methodology used in gathering data for the purposes of this study.

3. CHAPTER THREE: METHODOLOGY

Knowing what you want to find out leads inexorably to the question of how you will get the information (Miles & Huberman, 1984: 42).

3.1. *Introduction*

As this is an empirical study, that is, a case study of the practice of translation at the AUC and the PAP, the following section mainly addresses both quantitative and qualitative methods used in collecting data for this study as well as the model used for the assessment of the four STs and their translations from the two institutions, based on House's (1997) model.

According to Leedy and Ormrod: “[q]uantitative research involves looking at amounts, or *quantities*, of one or more variables of interest” (2013: 95). Put differently, quantitative research focuses on measuring “variables in some numerical ways, perhaps by using commonly accepted measures of the physical world (e.g., rulers, thermometers ...)” (2013: 95). Again, Leedy and Ormrod remark that: “[q]ualitative research involves looking at characteristics, or *qualities*, that cannot be entirely reduced to numerical values. A qualitative researcher typically aims to examine the many nuances and complexities of a particular phenomenon” (Leedy and Ormrod, 2013: 95).

For his part, Creswell writes that: “[q]uantitative methods involve the process of collecting, analyzing, interpreting, and writing the results of a study” (2009: xxiv). With respect to survey and experimental research, there exist, for example, methods which help the researcher in determining “ ... a sample and population, specifying the strategy of inquiry, collecting and analyzing the data, presenting the results, making an interpretation, and writing the research in a manner consistent with a survey or experimental research” (2009: xxiv).

Regarding qualitative methods, Creswell remarks that: “[p]urposeful sampling, collection of open-ended data, analysis of text or pictures, representation of information in figures and tables, and personal interpretation of the findings all inform qualitative procedures” (Creswell, 2009: xxiv).

In *Meeting the Practical Challenges of Mixed Methods Research*, Lieber and Weisner, on the one hand, argue that: “[t]he qualitative suite of methods uses words or images–text, discourse, narrative photographs, video, objects, symbols-to represent the world” (2010: 560). On the other hand, they remark that: “[t]he quantitative suite of methods represents the world through the use of numbers–variables, graphs, functions, analytic models” (2010: 560). Lieber and Weisner further write that: “[t]he complementary nature of qualitative and quantitative methods, employed simultaneously or sequentially, is of great value in bringing a wider range of evidence to strengthen and expand our understanding of a phenomenon” (2010: 560). Along the same lines, Lieber and Weisner observe that: “[t]here is nothing to support the idea that a particular form of data best represents particular behaviours, settings, or programs. Nor is there evidence that qualitative data must be analyzed by only quantitative analysis strategies” (Yoshikawa et al., 2008, cited in Lieber and Weisner, 2010: 561).

Since the study is about how translation is practised at the AUC and the PAP, both quantitative and qualitative data were collected (from the first group of 15 translators and/or interpreters of both the AUC and the PAP) using questionnaires. Also, face-to-face interviews with the second group of 15 translators and/or interpreters of the AUC and the PAP including a supervisor of the PAP were conducted. As such as, a purposive sampling method was used in gathering the data. This was done to ensure that all the translators and/or interpreters were included in the research. This is important because individual inputs of all the respondents were necessary in order to fulfil the specific objectives of the study. Put simply, the main purpose was to seek the respondents’ views, perspectives and personal experiences regarding the practice of translation in the two institutions (see Appendices A& B).

Official permission was granted by the Clerk of Parliament for the research to be conducted at the PAP. Finally, relevant secondary data sources (i.e. documentary evidence) governing the practice of translation in both institutions were also consulted.

3.2. *Questionnaire design*

In the Preface to *Practical Research: Planning and Design*, Leedy and Ormrod argue that research has an ultimate goal, i.e., to unearth the truth: “[i]ts purpose is to learn what has never been known before; to ask a significant question for which no conclusive answer has previously been found; and, by collecting and interpreting relevant data, to find an answer to that question” (2013: v). In this respect, Oliver suggests that the researcher must be guided in his or her work by what he refers to as ‘practical guidelines’ because “there is little direct interaction between researcher and respondent” (Oliver, 2010: 57).

The questionnaires for this study were designed specifically in order to fulfil the specific research objectives of this research. To this end, both closed and open-ended questions were formulated. Questions solicited only the information specifically needed for this research (see Appendices A and B).

3.3. *Study area*

The PAP is located at Gallagher Estate, Midrand, in the Johannesburg Metropolis, the Gauteng Province, the Republic of South Africa. The AU Commission is located in Addis-Ababa, the capital city of Ethiopia, which hosts the headquarters of the continental body and many other major regional and international organisations.

3.4. *Data collection*

As stated above, data were collected through completed questionnaires from translators and/or interpreters. The questionnaires consisted of both structured closed-ended and open-ended and semi-structured interview questions. Questionnaires were given to a group of respondents consisting of 15 translators and/or interpreters of the AUC and the PAP.

Additionally, face-to-face interviews were conducted with a second group of respondents consisting of 15 translators and/or interpreters of the AUC and the PAP including one supervisor of the PAP (see Appendices A and B).

3.4.1. Data collection methods

According to Hesse-Biber and Leavy, research “[m]ethods are selected in the light of their ability to address specific questions” (2011: 15). Therefore, it may be argued that the methods selected in this research are aimed at addressing specific questions regarding the practice of translation at the AUC and the PAP. This is because, from the perspective of these scholars “[r]esearchers take something that is whole and break it down to investigate its constituent parts and to note what is missing” (2011: 22).

Similarly, Stacey also observes that the purpose of every research interview is “to get truthful information from people on a subject about which they are under no obligation to tell, if they do not wish to” (1969: 72). Bossard and Boll, cited by Stacey, hold the view that “some people can answer questions with pencil and paper who cannot answer them verbally. The opposite is also true” (Stacey, 1969: 71).

Goode and Hatt, also cited by Stacey, consider the interview as “a process of social interaction” (1969: 72). Stacey makes a clear distinction between a structured and an unstructured interview. With respect to a structured interview, Stacey argues that the researcher selects all questions beforehand. Consequently, in a structured interview, the topics under discussion and the manner in which the questions are framed have been predetermined. Further, in a structured interview, questions may be open-ended and closed-ended in nature. In open-ended questions, interviewees or respondents are not restricted in their answers, that is, they respond to questions freely; in closed-ended questions respondents are restricted.

However, in an unstructured interview the respondent is only presented with the subject matter in its broadest sense. Therefore, the respondent answers questions depending on how s/he feels

about the subject. In other words, in this context, the respondent is provided with options regarding closed-ended questions.

3.5. *Sample and sampling techniques*

As discussed above, the purposive sampling technique was used in this study. This is because translators and/or interpreters selected in this study are what Leedy and Ormrod refer to as “‘typical’ of a group of those who represent diverse perspectives on an issue” (2013: 215), in this case, the practice of translation in both the AUC and the PAP. Further, purposive sampling technique was used in order to ensure that translators and/or interpreters working for both institutions exhausted the various questions they were asked in the questionnaires in order that the main objectives of the study would be achieved (see Appendices A & B). This supports further the suggestion of Hesse-Biber and Leavy to the effect that: “[t]he best way to gather this kind of data is directly from the population in which we are interested” (2011: 11).

3.6. *Data analysis*

Data were analysed using Statistical Package for Social Sciences (SPSS) software, which is appropriate in a social science research of this nature. Also, qualitative questions asked were analysed based on frequencies and percentages.

3.7. *Model and Criteria for the Assessment of Translation Quality at the AUC and the PAP*

As indicated in section 2.2, the model used in the assessment of the four STs and TTs from the AUC and the PAP was adapted slightly from the revised translation quality assessment model proposed by House (1997). The new model is slightly different from House’s revised model for a few reasons. First, every piece of work must stand on its own; this is what makes it an original work. Consequently, though this new model draws much from House’s model, it cannot however be regarded as a direct reproduction of House’s (1997) revised model of translation quality

assessment. Second, this new model is different from House's revised model because it incorporates some key features of models developed by Fenderico (1984) and the Localisation Industry Standard Association (LISA-1995), especially with regard to major errors, such as punctuation errors, omissions, grammatical errors, issues related to semantics between the ST and TT, shifts or mistranslations, or mismatches, additions, accuracy of the translation (in comparison to the ST), coherence and cohesion. Third, the salient features of the assessment of texts are displayed in a distinct, succinct and clear manner in two tables provided at the end of the analysis of each text. Put differently, these tables provide a brief summary of the analysis of each of the four texts evaluated. Fourth, without reading the entire analysis of a particular text and its translation, the reader can have a comprehensive understanding of the assessment of both ST and TT by simply referring to the two tables provided at the end of each evaluation. On the contrary, with House's (1997) revised translation quality assessment model, the reader must read the entire analysis in order to be able to understand it.

Finally, the features incorporated into the new model make it look more comprehensive, simple and easy to digest. Admittedly, House discusses the eight dimensions of *language use* and *language user* simultaneously with the six linguistic features of a text in the process of translation assessment. Further, specific translation problems such as grammar, punctuation, semantics and others are also covered extensively in the analysis of the quality of translations in House's revised model. However, these specific issues are not presented in a succinct and explicit manner as they are provided in tables in this new model. Clearly, this is a departure from the revised version of translation quality assessment model proposed by House (1997). The ultimate goal of this evaluative exercise is to produce a model that has empirical validity.

Following is a comprehensive description of the new model used in assessing the quality of some translations in both the AUC and the PAP. For example, Table 1 below provides an explanation of the six linguistic features of a text as used in House's (1997) model: *tenor, field, mode, register, genre and language* with corresponding meaning in the centre (Original text column). This equally applies to the TT (Translation column on the right) during the translation assessment process. The linguistic features of a text and the eight dimensions applied side by side in House's (1997) revised model are also used in the assessment of some translations from

both the AUC and the PAP, particularly in the light of House's statement to the effect that it is important for any translation evaluator to make a comparison of the TT with what House refers to as the textual profile of the original text. In other words, a textual profile constitutes the yardstick at the disposal of the evaluator to conduct a thorough analysis of both ST and TT with the view to helping the evaluator convey as clearly and accurately as possible the meaning of the information contained in such texts. To this end, the evaluator can divide such texts along the linguistic features they display, and also distribute them into eight different dimensions (see 2.2).

In Table 1 below, a ST and its TT are assessed along the eight dimensions of *language user* and *language use* and the six linguistic features of a text: *tenor*, *field*, *mode*, *register*, *genre* and *language*. These linguistic parameters were discussed in Chapter 2 (section 2.2 Theoretical Framework). The main objective is to compare both ST and TT in order to ensure that the above mentioned parameters have been maintained in the TT or have been changed during the translation process.

In Table 2 below, on the left, we find the criteria set for the analysis of STs and TTs. Put simply, the evaluation of the four STs and TTs is done along these criteria, which are numbered numerically (I-X) and grouped into ten main categories: Category I (Grammar), category II (Semantics), category III (Punctuation), category IV (Spelling), category V (Mismatches), category VI (Additions), category VII (Omissions), category VIII (Accuracy), category IX (Cohesion) and category X (Coherence). It must be emphasised that these ten criteria apply to the ST and TT (in the centre columns). Consequently, when this symbol (√) appears in a particular category (both ST and TT) it means that no error has been identified in that category. This symbol (X) means an error has been identified in that category. Finally, there is a rating of the four STs and their translations from a five-point scale according to all the ten categories mentioned above with (1) considered Poor while (2) is Fair, (3) equals Good, (4) is Very Good in comparison to (5) which ranks Excellent.

The ten criteria set by the researcher aim at making the assessment of the four STs and TTs much easier. They are explained as follows:

I. Grammar: This criteria is used by the researcher in identifying grammatical errors in both STs and TTs.

II. Semantics: The researcher uses the criteria in verifying whether or not meaning varies between the STs and the TTs.

III. Punctuation: The researcher identifies punctuation errors in both STs and TTs.

IV. Spelling: Like the previous criteria (III), this parameter aims at identifying spelling mistakes in both STs and TTs.

V. Mismatches: This criteria essentially helps the researcher ensure that words and expressions used in the STs are not changed in the translation process. Put differently, these are mistranslations.

VI. Additions: The researcher tries to establish whether the translator has deliberately added new words/expressions than necessary, which are like to change the meaning of some sentences or parts of the text.

VII. Omissions: The researcher uses this criteria in determining whether words and/or expressions were omitted in both STs and TTs.

VIII. Accuracy: Based on a comparison of STs and TTs, the researcher is able to establish whether the translation is accurate or not.

IX. Cohesion: The researcher looks out for cohesive devices, particularly logical connections between sentences in both STs and TTs.

X. Coherence: Like the previous parameter, the evaluator is able to establish whether ideas in the STs and TTs are logical and coherent and the text as a whole ‘flows’.

It must be pointed out that the ten criteria are rated on a five-points scale provided at the end of each analysis. Further, the eight dimensions discussed in section 2.2 have not been incorporated into the two tables below for space constraints. However, the eight dimensions and the linguistic features of a text are used side by side in the assessment of the four STs and TTs in Chapter Four below.

Linguistic features of a text	Original text	Translation
Tenor	Focuses on the people taking part, the nature of the addresser and addressees, and the relationship binding them (social power or social distance).	Focuses on the people taking part, the nature of the addresser and addressees, and the relationship binding them (social power or social distance).
Field	What is going on/ happening?	What is going on/ happening?
Mode	Refers to both channels used: written/text or spoken/speech.	Refers to both channels used: written/text or spoken/speech.
Register	A variety of language a user considers appropriate in a given situation.	A variety of language a user considers appropriate in a given situation.
Genre	Nature of text/ discourse.	Nature of text/ discourse.
Language	Contemporary/ Archaic.	Contemporary/ Archaic.

Table 1: Linguistic features of ST and TT

Language category	Original text	Translation	Rating (0-5)
Grammar I			
Semantics II			
Punctuation III			
Spelling IV			
Mismatches V			
Additions VI			
Omissions VII			
Accuracy VIII			
Cohesion IV			
Coherence X			

Table 2: Language errors

A 5- points scale for rating both ST and TT

- (1) Poor (2) Fair (5) Excellent
(3) Good (4) Very Good

Tables 1 and 2 aim at providing a brief summary of the results of the analysis of the texts.

This leads us to Chapter Four which assesses four STs and TTs from the AUC and the PAP.

4. CHAPTER FOUR: TRANSLATION QUALITY ASSESSMENT

4.1. *Introduction*

This chapter assesses four STs and their TTs by translators of the AUC and the PAP. They are:

(1) *Protocol to the Treaty Establishing the African Economic Community relating to the Pan-African Parliament* (see English ST at Appendix F and French TT at Appendix G).

(2) *Oath/Solemn Declaration of Allegiance (Rule No.9)* (see English ST at Appendix H and French TT at Appendix I).

(3) *Projet d'Allocution du Président de la Commission, Dr Jean Ping, à la Séance d'Ouverture de la 19^{ème} Session Ordinaire de la Conférence de l'Union Africaine Union–Addis Abéba* (see French ST at Appendix J and English TT at Appendix K).

(4) *Lettre du Président Numéro 2. Décembre 2001* (see French ST at Appendix L and English TT at Appendix M).

The model used in the assessment of the four STs and their translations is adapted slightly from the revised translation quality assessment model proposed by House (1997). The two STs from the PAP are in English with corresponding TTs in French. The last two STs from the AUC are drafted in French with their TTs in English.

4.2. Text One: Protocol to the Treaty Establishing the African Economic Community (See English ST at Appendix F)

Drafted in English, the ST is a political, administrative and legal document, which consists of 11 pages. The TT is in French and has 15 pages. The ST is found at Appendix F and the TT at Appendix G. The analysis of the texts begins with the six linguistic features of a text followed by the explanation of the eight dimensions of *language user* and *language use* with respect to the ST and TT evaluated plus the ten criteria set in the language category. Finally, Tables 3 and 4 summarise the results of the analysis of the texts.

4.2.1. Analysis of the original text

Text One: Protocol to the Treaty Establishing the African Economic Community Relating to the Pan-African Parliament.

Field: This is a political and administrative text, a legal document in which the AU (through the PAP and the AEC) stipulates the terms and conditions under which the African Economic Community (AEC) was established. This document originates from the ‘source’. In the context of the PAP, documents to be translated originate mostly from the ‘source’: the Departments of Legislative Business, and Finance, Administration and Parliamentary Relations respectively.

Tenor: The main addresser is the AU (through the PAP and the AEC) and the addressees are Member States of the AU. Looking at the nature of the ST, it can be argued that the PAP and the AEC exercise some degree of authority over Member States, particularly with respect to rules, regulations and conditions to be observed as far as their relationship is concerned.

Mode: The Protocol is a written document: a political and administrative text; it is meant to be read and aims at Member States of the AU. The document can be treated as a simple monologue because the AU releases it to Member States signatories to the Treaty and does not anticipate an immediate reaction from Member States. Consequently, there is an indirect addressee involvement. Finally, the text falls under the simple category and is *written to be read*.

Register: The register of the ST may be appropriate for what House calls an “educated middle class native speaker” (1997: 67).

Genre: It is a political and administrative text, a discourse in which rules, regulations, terms and conditions regarding the establishment of the Treaty establishing the AEC relating to the PAP are clearly set out to Member States signatories to the Protocol.

Language: The language used in the ST is simple, clear, unambiguous, objective and straight to the point. The ST uses contemporary English. It is unmarked, though legal, and is not restricted to any specific language community of the AU. The language should be understood by average, middle-class and highly educated native speakers of English.

“Dimensions of Language User”

Geographical origin: The ST is unmarked since it does not use a dialect restricted to a particular geographic location of the AU. It uses what may be referred to as conventional English.

Social class: The PAP and the AEC are organs of the AU, the ultimate continental body. The Protocol is a legal document which may have been written by what House terms the “educated middle class native speaker” (1997: 67).

Time: No words or expressions used in the TT seem to suggest that the TT belongs to an earlier period. Though the Protocol predominantly uses contemporary legal terminology, the wording is unique to the OAU/AU. A few examples: “The Member States of the African Unity State Parties to the Treaty Establishing the African Economic Community” (Preamble, Paragraph I, ST Appendix F). “Further considering that articles 7 and 14 ... in a related Protocol” (Preamble, Paragraph IV, ST Appendix F).

“Dimensions of Language Use”

Medium: The Protocol is a written document: a legal, political and administrative text. It is meant to be read and aims at Member States of the AU. The text falls under the simple category and is *written to be read*.

Participation: The Protocol is a simple monologue, a one-directional discourse from the PAP/AEC to Member States. As such, Members States are not expected to react immediately to the message contained in the document. Consequently, there is an indirect involvement on the part of Member States.

Social role relationship: The Protocol displays features of an asymmetrical relationship between the PAP/AEC and Member States. As the highest political body of the continent, the AU through the PAP and the AEC has a certain degree of authority and power over Member States in terms of rules and conditions governing their relationship.

Social attitude: To some extent, some degree of social distance exists between the PAP, the AEC and Member States of the AU. Consequently, as higher continental bodies, they state through this political, administrative and legal document the rules, regulations and other related conditions binding them and Members States. This is further evidenced by the presence of declarative and imperative statements. Also, the text employs a formal style; this results in the formally-structured format in which it is written.

Province: In order to avoid repeating the professional activity, the occupation of the source (author) of the text, in this case, the AU and the PAP as well as the field and topic of the text (House, 1997: 42), this parameter was not applied because issues related to it mentioned earlier were discussed at length in the analysis above.

4.2.2. Statement of function

The Protocol performs an ideational function because it provides Member States of the OAU/AU parties to the Protocol establishing the AEC the opportunity to be informed about the rules, regulations and conditions of their membership of the institutions mentioned above. Therefore, the information made available to Member States is impersonal, formal, factual and strictly official as evidenced by the use of phrases as well as sentences such as “*Member State*”, or “*Member States*” (line 9 of Article 1, Appendix F, ST, p 2), “ ... *Further noting that the establishment of the PAP ... the Continent*” (paragraph IV of the Preamble, ST p 1), “*Conscious of the imperative and urgent need ... ethnic and national differences*” (paragraph V of the Preamble, Appendix F, ST, p1), “*Firmly convinced that ... integration of the continent*” (paragraph XIV of the Preamble, Appendix F, ST, p 2), “*Member States hereby establish a Pan-African Parliament ... by the present protocol*” (Clause 1 of Article 2, Appendix F, ST, p 3), “*The ultimate aim of the Pan-African Parliament shall be ... this Protocol*” (Clause 3 of Article 2, Appendix F, ST, p 3), “*strengthen Continental solidarity and build a sense of common destiny among the peoples of Africa*” (Clause 8 Article 3, Appendix F, ST, p 4), etc.

This parameter is not part of the criteria set for the assessment of the texts. This notwithstanding, it must be pointed out that the ST is divided into several sections (25 Articles); several long sentences are found throughout the text:

Preamble: (See Appendix F, ST, p 1).

Paragraph II: “*Bearing in mind ... by the year 2000*” (75 words).

Paragraph III: “*Noting, in particular, ... and strong Africa*” (52 words).

Paragraph IV: “*Further noting ... facing the Continent*” (43 words).

Paragraph VIII: “*Recalling the Cairo ... regional level*” (56 words).

Article 8 (Appendix F, ST p 5):

1. “*The Pan-African Parliamentarians ... Diplomatic Relations*” (46 words).

Article 9 (Appendix F, ST, p 5):

1. “*The Pan-African Parliamentarians ... of his or her duties*” (68 words).

Article 11 (Appendix F, ST, p 6):

1. “*Examine, ... and the rule of law*” (67 words).

Article 12:

5. “*The officers ... and its organs*” (63 words).
6. “*The Pan-African Parliament ... as appropriate*” (50 words).
7. *The President shall ... Parliamentary proceedings*” (47 words).

Article 25 (Appendix F, ST, p11):

1. “*Five years ... the African Continent*” (68 words).

4.2.3. Analysis of the target text (See French TT at Appendix G)

First, the TT is analysed from the “*Dimensions of Language User*”. To this end, the following parameters are used:

Geographical origin: Both the ST and TT are not limited to any specific linguistic community of the AU. The TT is unmarked, formal and strictly official. It may have been written by highly-educated native speakers of French.

Social class indicates the social position of the source of the message. The text originates from the Department of Legislative Business of the PAP which is the highest legislative body of the AU. Consequently, some degree of social distance can be seen between the PAP and the AEC and Member States. This is because the two bodies mentioned above state through this political, administrative and legal document the rules, regulations and other related conditions governing their relationship with Members States. This is further evidenced by the presence of declarative and imperative statements. Also, the text employs a formal style resulting in the formally-structured format in which the document is written.

Time aims at identifying what makes the TT current or ‘archaic’. Put differently, the main purpose is to identify specific words and expressions that may possibly suggest the text is either old or contemporary. In this case, no words or expressions used in the TT belong to an earlier period.

Having analysed the TT from the “*Dimensions of Language User*”, the next section will treat the target text from the perspective of “*Language Use*”.

Medium: The Protocol is a written document: a political and administrative text. It is meant to be read and aims at Member States of the AU. Also, the text falls under the simple category and can be treated as *written to be read*.

Participation: Like the ST, the TT is a simple monologue from the AU (through the PAP and the AEC) to Member States. The TT displays the power and influence of the OAU/AU and AEC over Member States parties to the Protocol. As it is a one-directional discourse from the AU, consequently, there is an indirect addressee involvement from Member States signatories to the Treaty category.

Social role relationship: The asymmetrical relationship between the OAU/AU and Member States was fully maintained throughout the TT. This is evidenced by the legal nature of the text. Again, the OAU/AU is seen as exercising some degree of political authority or power over Member States as far its relationship with those countries is concerned.

Social attitude: To some extent, some degree of social distance exists between the PAP and the AEC and Member States. Consequently, as higher authorities on the continent, these bodies dictate through this political, administrative and legal document the rules, regulations and other related conditions governing their relationship with Members States. This is further evidenced by the presence of declarative and imperative statements. Also, the text employs a formal style as seen in the formally-structured format in which the document is written. Finally, the legal language used in the ST is maintained throughout the TT.

The section below discusses the 10 language criteria and the corresponding ratings in Tables 3 and 4 with respect to the assessment of the ST and TT.

- I. Grammar: In paragraph III: “ ... *le 36 ème session ordinaire*” is incorrect; the correct form is “ ... *la 36 ème session ordinaire*”. Further, Article 23 (Appendix G, TT, p) :

« ... en transmet copie à tous les États membres », « ... en transmet exemplaire à tous les États membres » is preferable to copie in this instance. On the rating scale below, Grammar in both ST and TT is rated 4.

II. Semantics: The following changes in meaning were found between the ST and TT (see Appendix G, TT):

- Preamble: paragraph II (Appendix F, ST, p 1): “ ... *by the year 2000*” is rendered by “*au plus tard en l’an 2000*” (Appendix J, TT, p 1); normally, by 2000 expresses the notion of from the time the text was produced till the end of 2000. It would have therefore been understandable if “*by the latest*” was used in the ST, which, of course, will be translated “*au plus tard*”. This change in meaning may also be treated as an omission.
- Article 2 (2): (Appendix F, ST, p 3) “ ... *all the peoples of Africa*” is rendered by “ ... *toutes les populations africaines*” (Appendix G, TT, p 4). The phrase is specifically making reference to all Member States of the OAU; therefore a suggested translation would be “*tous les peuples africains*”.
- Article 2 (3) (Appendix F, ST, p 3): “ ... *an institution with full legislative powers*” was rendered by “ ... *une institution dotée de pleins pouvoirs sur le plan législatif*” (Appendix G, TT, p 4). Actually, the ST did not use “*full powers on the legislative front/area*”. Therefore, a suggested translation would be “*une institution dotée de pleins pouvoirs législatifs*”.
- Article 7 (Appendix F, ST, p 5) : “*Membership of the Pan-African ... executive or judicial functions in a Member State*” was rendered “ ... *avec l’exercice d’une fonction de l’exécutif ou du judiciaire*” (Appendix G, TT, p 7), “ ... *avec l’exercice d’une fonction exécutive ou judiciaire*” would be a suggested translation since the ST did not use “*functions of the executive or the judiciary*”.
- Article 8 (2) (Appendix F, ST, p 5): “ ... *to waive the immunity of a member*” was rendered by “ ... *lever l’immunité parlementaire garantie par le présent article à un membre*” (Appendix G, TT, p 7). Here, the notion of “*garantie par le présent article*” was introduced, which was absent in the original text. This may also be considered an addition.

- Article 12 (12) (Appendix F, ST, p 8): “ ... *a matter is one of the procedure or not*” was translated “ ... *s’il s’agit oui ou non d’une question de procédure*” (Appendix G, TT, p 11).
- Article 13 (Appendix F, ST, p 8): “ ... *before proceeding to any matter*” was rendered by “ ... *avant d’entreprendre toute autre tâche*” (Appendix G, TT, p 12) considering the fact that the MPs are yet to hold themselves as new Pan-African MPs.
- Article 15(2) (Appendix F, ST, p 9). “*The budget shall be drawn up by*” was rendered by “ ... *Le budget est arrêté par*” (Appendix G, TT, p 13). In practice, the main idea conveyed in the text is that the “*the budget must be prepared*” the idea of determining the budget may come as a result of it being prepared. Even though it is a minor change, a suggested translation would be “*Le budget est élaboré ou préparé par*”, since the original text did not indicate that “*The budget shall be determined by*”.
- Article 18: “ ... *or other deliberative organs*” (Appendix F, ST, paragraph I, p 9) was translated “*ou tous autres organes législatifs*” (Appendix, G, TT, p 13). The ST used “or other”, which will translate “*ou d’autres*”, but it did not use “*any other*”, which will also translate “*tous autres*”. Therefore, a suggested translation would be “*ou d’autres organes*”.
- Article 20 (Appendix F, ST, p 10): “*The Court of Justice shall be seized with all matters of interpretation emanating from this Protocol*” was translated “*Toute question née de l’interprétation du présent Protocole est décidée par la Cour de justice*” (Appendix G, TT, p 14). From a practical point of view, the main idea here is that the Court of Justice shall be resorted to regarding all matters of interpretation relating to this Protocol. Therefore, a suggested translation would be “*La Cour de justice est saisie de toute question/requête relative à l’interprétation du présent Protocole*”. Both ST and TT are rated 3.

III. Punctuation: The paragraph of Article 15(2) ends without a full stop; this may also be treated as a punctuation problem. Both ST and TT are rated 3 in Table 4 below.

IV. Spelling: Article 25 (2: line 3) the adjective “*précèdent*” is used without the straight French accent (*accent aigu*); the correct form is “*précédent*”. In other words, the straight accent (*accent aigu é* in French) on both vowels must be the same. The ST and TT are rated 3.

V. Mismatches: No mistakes were recorded in this category. The rating is therefore 5.

VI. Additions : The TT ends with “*Fait à Syrte, Libye, le 2 Mars 2011*” plus a list of all 53 Member States of the OAU (Appendix G, TT, p). The ST does not include such information. This category is rated 4.

VII. Omissions : Article 15 (2). The paragraph ends without a full stop. Both ST and TT are rated 3 in this category.

VIII. Accuracy: On comparing closely the ST and TT, it can be said that the translation is accurate. Therefore the rating in this category is 5.

IX. Cohesion: Both the ST and TT are cohesive and are rated 5 because logical connections as well as cohesive devices are used between sentences.

X. Coherence: The ST and TT read smoothly, coherently and fluently. As House puts it: “when a translation reads fluently, it is rated best” (1997: 11). Consequently, the rating here is also 5.

Having discussed the ten criteria set in the language criteria and the corresponding ratings, it may be of interest to mention that the ST relied most often on coordinating conjunctions *and*, and *or* as well as the definite article *the*. Below are a few examples:

In the Preamble (see Appendix F, ST, p 1), the definite article *the* was used 54 times. This is because noun phrases were used more frequently: “ ... *the* Fourth Extraordinary ... of *the* Assembly ... in *the* Great ... establishing *the* African ... calling for *the* speedy ... of *the* institution ... ” (see Appendix F, ST, Preamble 2nd paragraph, p 1), “Recalling ... *the* Declaration ... *the* political ... and *the* Fundamental ... in the World ... adopted by *the* ... of *the* Assembly” (see ST,

Preamble, paragraph IX p 9-10)". Also, the coordinating conjunction *and* was used 18 times: "Conscious of ... and urgent ... solidarity and ... and national differences" (see ST, Preamble, paragraph V, p 1). In *Article 1* of the text, the coordinating conjunction *or* was used only four times. As the ST is divided into several sections (into 25 Articles), it makes it difficult to read smoothly.

4.2.4. Statement of quality

A close analysis shows that the TT displays an ideational function as evidenced by the key definitions in Article 1 (Appendix F, ST, pp. 2-3): "*In this Protocol, the following expressions shall have the meanings assigned to them hereunder:* (line 1).

"*Assembly*" means the Assembly of Heads of States and Government of the Community"; (Article 1, definition 1, Appendix F, ST, p 2).

"*Member of Pan-African Parliament*" or "*Pan-African Parliamentarian*" means a representative elected or designated in accordance with Article 5 of this Protocol"; (Article 1, definition 8, Appendix F, ST, p 2).

"*Member State*" or "*Member States*", unless the context otherwise prescribes, means Member State of Member States of the Community"; (Article 1, definition 9, Appendix F, ST, p 2).

Further, the ideational function of the text is also evidenced by the following statements: "*The ultimate aim of the Pan-African Parliament shall be to evolve ... this Protocol*" (Article 2, clause 3, Appendix F, ST, p 3), "*familiarize the peoples of Africa ... African Union*"; (Article 3, clause 4, Appendix F, ST, p 3), "*Member States shall be represented ... of Parliamentarians*"; (Article 4, clause 1, Appendix F, ST, p 4), "*The representation of each Member State ... deliberative organ*". (Article 4, clause 3, Appendix F, ST, p 4), "*The Pan-African Parliament ... powers only*" (Article 11, paragraph I, Appendix F, ST, p 6).

Since the ST is primarily aimed at informing Member States of their duties and responsibilities towards the OAU/AU, the translator used a *covert* translation strategy because of the ideational nature of the ST. Consequently, the translator applied what House terms a *cultural filter* (1997:

29). By a cultural filter, House means the possible ways through which the translator makes “shifts and changes” in line with various “pragmatic parameters” (1997: 29), especially with respect to the determination of the social relationship between the OAU/AU and Member States.

According to House, the function of a *covert* translation is to “imitate the original’s function in a different discourse frame, a different discourse world” (1997: 29). Put simply, “an equivalence is sought in and via the vessel of the new language for the function that the original has in its linguacultural setting” (1997: 29). This situation applies perfectly to the TT, as the translator tried as much as possible to convey the meaning of the original text by finding appropriate equivalence in the target language. On his part, Edmondson observes that: “[a] discourse world is to be understood as an application of the notion of a possible world derived from logical semantics to the pragmatic interpretation of conversational behaviour” (Edmondson, 1981: 201). The translator used a pragmatic equivalence in the TT as s/he then attempted to match the function, which is to inform Member States of the OAU/AU, particularly new Pan-African MPs of their duties and responsibilities regarding the Protocol relating to the establishment of the AEC. The translator also shows how MPs of various parliaments of Member States are expected to discharge their functions as new MPs of the legislative organ of the AU. Consequently, it may be argued that the function adequately meets the ‘communicative function’ of the translation, which is to be as informative as possible.

As in the ST, the definite article *le, la* and *l’, les* coordinating conjunctions *et*, and *tel que* and demonstrative adjective were used frequently throughout the translation: “*Les États membres ... le Parlement ... dont la ... les attributions ... les pouvoirs et l’organisation ... par le présent protocole*” (Appendix J, Article 2, clause 1, TT, p 4), « *Le Président et les Vices-Présidents ... le Bureau ... Le Bureau, sous le contrôle ... et la direction ... donner le Parlement... de la gestion ... et l’administration ... Dans l’exercice ... le Bureau ... par le Secrétaire et les Secrétaires adjoints* » (Appendix G, Article 12 (5), TT, p 10). Further, long sentences identified in the ST, particularly in the *Preamble* are almost the same in the TT (Appendix G, TT, pp 1-2):

Paragraph I: “*Ayant à l’esprit ... en l’an 2000*” (79 words).

Paragraph III : « *Notant en particulier ... solidaire et forte* » (50 words).

Paragraph IV : « *Notant également que ... se posent au continent* » (58 words).

Paragraph V : « *Conscients ... religieuse et nationales* » (39 words).

Paragraph VII: “*Considérant en outre ... Protocole afférent*” (43 words).

Paragraph VIII : « *Rappelant le Programme ... niveau régional* » (56 words).

A few general observations are made regarding the presentation of the document (additional spaces) even though these observations are not part of the criteria set with respect to the assessment. Put simply, the presence of these additional spaces may be explained by the fact that ‘right justification’ was used in the presentation of the document:

Article 5 (2): On the 2nd line (Appendix G, TT, p 6) the space gaps need to be closed to look like this: “*Parlement panafricain lors de sa session suivant ...*”. An additional space was used above and also in the Articles below:

Article 11 (1) : “*l’homme, à la consolidation des institutions*” (Appendix G, TT p 8).

Article 11 (6) : « *l’OUA/Communauté dans les circonscriptions des ...* » (Appendix G, TT p 9).

Article 11 (7) : « *Promouvoir la coordination et l’harmonisation des politiques, mesures, programmes et activités des ...* » (Appendix G, TT p 9).

Article 12 (12) : « ... la voix du président de séance ... » (Appendix G, TT p 11).

Article 17 : « *Les langues de travail du Parlement panafricain sont, si possible, des langues africaines ainsi que l’arabe, l’anglais, le français et le portugais* » (Appendix G, TT p 13).

Article 21 (1) : « *conformément à leurs procédures constitutionnelles respectives* » (Appendix G, TT p 14) .

Further, there was a lack of consistency in the use of capital P for the President of the Pan-African Parliament. For example, in paragraph X (Article Premier, Appendix G, TT, p 3) and in Articles 12 (5), 12 (7) 12 (8) respectively (Appendix G, TT pp. 10) *Président* was used with a capital letter P. However, in Article 11 (8) (Appendix G, TT pp. 9): « *Adopter son règlement intérieur et élire son président* », *président* was used with a lower case (p).

From the assessment above, four categories: (V), (VIII), (IX) and (X) in both ST and TT are rated 5 (Excellent). Put simply, no errors are found as far as Mismatches, Accuracy, Cohesion and Coherence are concerned. However, there are a few problems with Grammar, Semantics, Punctuation, Spelling, Additions and Omissions. Tables 3 and 4 below provide a brief summary of the results of the analysis of both ST and TT.

Linguistic features of a text	Original text (11 pages)	Translation (15 pages)
Tenor	The AU through the PAP/AEC communicates with Member States signatories to the Treaty establishing the African Economic Community. Power and administrative relations between the PAP/AEC and Members States at play.	The AU through the PAP/AEC communicates with Member States signatories to the Treaty establishing the African Economic Community. Power and administrative relations between the PAP/AEC and Members States at play.
Field	Protocol establishing the African Economic Community relating to the Pan-African Parliament originating from the 'source' being directed at Member States of the AU signatories to the Treaty.	Protocol establishing the African Economic Community relating to the Pan-African Parliament originating from the 'source' being directed at Member States of the AU signatories to the Treaty.
Mode	<i>Protocol</i> is a written text: legal document binding all Member States of the OAU signatories to the Treaty establishing the African Economic Community.	<i>Protocole</i> is a written text: legal document binding all member States of the OAU signatories to the Treaty establishing the African Economic Community.
Genre	Political and administrative text.	Political and administrative text.
Register	Unmarked, not-specific to a particular linguistic region, neutral.	Unmarked not-specific to a particular linguistic region, neutral.
Language	Unmarked, formal, conventional; originating from a native English speaker and devoid of any archaic words/expressions.	Unmarked, formal, conventional originating from a native French speaker and devoid of any archaic words/expressions.

Table 3: Linguistic features of ST and TT

Language category	Original text	Translation	Rating (1-5)
Grammar	√	X	4
Semantics	X	X	3
Punctuation	X	X	3
Spelling	X	X	3
Mismatches	√	√	5
Additions	√	X	4
Omissions	X	X	3
Accuracy	√	√	5
Cohesion	√	√	5
Coherence	√	√	5

Table 4: Language errors

A 5- points scale for rating both ST and TT

- (1) Poor (2) Fair (5) Excellent
(3) Good (4) Very Good

4.3. Text Two: Oath/Solemn Declaration Of Allegiance (See English ST at Appendix H)

Both the ST and TT consist each of a page; *Oath/Solemn Declaration of Allegiance* is drafted in English and French respectively. The ST is found at Appendix H and the TT at Appendix I. The six linguistic features of a text set the tone for the analysis. This is followed by the explanation of the eight dimensions plus the ten criteria set in the language category. Finally, Tables 5 and 6 present a brief summary of the results of the analysis.

4.3.1. Analysis of the original text

“Dimensions of Language User”

Geographical origin: The ST uses contemporary English. It is unmarked, that is, not a dialect of a specific linguistic community of the AU Member States. However, the wording of the ST may be treated as specific to the PAP.

Social class: Indicates the social position of the source of the message. The text originates from the Department of Legislative Business of the PAP, the highest legislative body of the continent. Consequently, some degree of social distance can be seen between the PAP and new MPs who have to swear their allegiance to the PAP. This is further evidenced by the presence of declarative statements. Also, the text employs a formal style resulting in the formally-structured format in which it is written. The ST may have been written by a highly educated speaker or by what House terms “the educated middle class speaker of the standard language” (1997: 38).

Time: The Solemn/Oath of Allegiance uses contemporary English.

It must be emphasised that the first three dimensions under “*Dimension of Language User*” are, according to House, “relatively permanent and stable features pertaining to the language user” and are in line with Crystal and Davy’s definition of the *Dimension of Language User* (Crystal and Davy, 1969: 66, cited in House, 1997: 38).

Here, the ST is analysed from the “*Dimensions of Language Use*”:

Medium: In the light of the distinctions discussed in the Theoretical Framework (Chapter Two), the ST is a written document classified under the simple category and is *written to be spoken*. With respect to the *complex medium* category, House discusses concepts such as: “structural simplicity, incompleteness of sentences, specific manners of constructing texts, particular theme-rheme sequencing and subjectivity”, etc. (1997: 40).

As stated in section 2.2, House argues that a discourse is likely to display a *theme* or *rheme*. In this case, the *theme* is the *Oath/Solemn Declaration of Allegiance* by the MP. The *rheme* may be the additional information provided in the Solemn Declaration of Allegiance such as the specific actions the MPs are expected to take in order to demonstrate their loyalty and faithfulness to the PAP: “I ... hereby swear/solemnly declare that:

- (i) *I will perform my functions ... the peoples of Africa* (Appendix H, ST, paragraph I);
- (ii) *I will be faithful and bear true allegiance ... as by law established* (Appendix H, ST, paragraph II);
- (iii) *I will promote adherence ... Pan-African Parliament* (Appendix H, ST, paragraph III).

Participation: Participation can be regarded as a *simple dialogue* between the PAP and the addressees because the latter: the MPs are being directly addressed and instructed with respect to what to do before assuming their functions as new MPs of the PAP. Consequently, participation in the ST is direct and quite high as evidenced by the use of the personal pronoun “*I*” plus the declarative statement to be made by new MPs of the PAP as well as the full name and signature to be provided by the MPs. It must be pointed out that the personal pronoun “*I*” was used five times in the original text (Appendix H, ST). This demonstrates what House terms “the illocutionary force of an utterance” (1997: 31). According to House: “[t]he illocutionary force of an utterance may often be predicted from grammatical features, e.g. word order, mood of the verb, stress, intonation or the presence of performative verbs” (1997: 31). Though it may be thought that the text maintains a certain distance vis à vis the reader, nonetheless, the use of the first personal pronoun “*I*” seems to suggest that, to some extent, the reader is put on a par with

the MPs who are the addressees (in this case), therefore suggesting the same level of participation. It is to be noted that MPs are directly addressed in the speech act.

Social role relationship: In this context, the role relationship between the PAP and MPs is asymmetrical (characterised by a distance or a degree of authority). The PAP may be viewed as the highest legislative body of the continent or the Parliament of Parliaments (of 54 countries). Consequently, the PAP maintains a degree of authority over MPs; therefore, all the 252 MPs drawn from the continent must submit to the PAP in terms of rules, regulations and by-laws. This is evidenced by the title of the text, particularly Rule No.9 (Appendix H, ST- English).

Social attitude: The formal and distant relationship between the PAP and MPs is observed through the heading *Oath/Declaration of Allegiance*, which each MP is expected to take before s/he assumes their functions. Further, the heading of the ST: *Oath/Solemn Declaration of Allegiance* sets the tone for this distant relationship between the Parliament and MPs. This formal distance between the two parties is displayed throughout the ST. The use of the personal pronoun “I”, and the signing of the document by individual MPs demonstrates that the text is by nature formal and official as opposed to an unofficial document.

4.3.2. Statement of function

House observes that for the purpose of characterizing the function of an individual text, there is a need to make a clear distinction between two main concepts: “function” and “functions of a language” (1997: 36). On his part, Lyons remarks that: “[w]hen items of different languages can be put into correspondence with one another on the basis of identification of common features and situations in the cultures in which they operate, we may say that the items have the same *application*” (Lyons, 1969: 434). According to House, the definition of the function of a text is of the utmost importance, since it involves the determination of its *textual profile*, which “results from a systematic linguistic-pragmatic analysis of the text in its context of situation” (1997: 36). Thus, context means “the situation in which a text unfolds” (1997: 36). This linguistic reality must therefore be given the necessary consideration, particularly when such a text is being interpreted.

Consequently, House observes that in order to determine the “functional equivalence between a source text and the translated text, the source text has to be analysed first such that the equivalence which may be sought for the translation text can be stated precisely” (1997: 37).

The ST primarily has an ideational function because it provides simple, objective, straightforward information to new MPs. It must be noted however that the border between both the ideational and interpersonal functional features of a text may be so blurred that sometimes it is difficult to demarcate. In this context, both ideational and interpersonal features overlap. This is because, to some extent, irrespective of the fact that the original text provides objective information to MPs, at the same time, it appeals to them to take an action by swearing an oath of allegiance to the institution before they assume their functions as new MPs. This is to ensure that a positive and cordial working relationship is established between them and the PAP as illustrated by:

- (i) *I will perform my function ... the peoples of Africa* (Appendix G, ST, paragraph I);
- (ii) *I will be faithful and bear allegiance ... as by law established; and* (Appendix G, ST paragraph II);
- (iii) *I will promote adherence ... Pan-African Parliament* (Appendix G, ST, paragraph III).

With respect to *genre*, the ST is a political and administrative text: a legally-binding document. Again, both *ideational* and *interpersonal* functions interplay in the text. As regards *field*, this text is a binding document in which new MPs are being entreated to swear an oath of allegiance. By swearing an oath of allegiance, MPs affirm their belonging to the institution. As a result, they are expected to discharge faithfully all the duties of new MPs; they are also entitled to some privileges attached to their functions. With reference to *tenor*, the main participants in this discourse are the PAP and new MPs. Also, looking at the tone of the text, it can be argued that the PAP maintains a degree of authority over MPs. This is illustrated by the heading of the text: *Oath/Solemn Declaration of Allegiance*. Therefore, the administrative and formal distance is clearly displayed throughout the text. With respect to *mode*, it may be said that it is a document *written to be spoken as if spoken*. It can be assumed that the text may have been written for a middle-class or highly-educated native English speaker. Finally, with regard to *language*, no

specific archaic words or expressions could be found in the text that suggest that it is emanating from an earlier period. Also, the *register* here is formal, neutral and strictly official.

4.3.3. Analysis of the target text (See TT Appendix I)

In this section, the TT is analysed first according to the three “*Dimensions of Language User*”.

Geographical origin: Both the ST and TT display the same features. For example, the language is unmarked; it is not limited to a particular linguistic geographical region of any Member States of the AU. Consequently, the register of the text should be understood by the average, middle class and highly educated native speakers of French.

Social class: The ST originates from the Department of Legislative Business of the PAP. The PAP is the highest legislative body of the continent.

Time: The most important issue here is the reader’s ability to identify whether the TT can be classified as contemporary or ‘archaic’, particularly if there are words and expressions that can possibly suggest that the text is contemporary or otherwise. In this case, the TT uses standard French.

Having analysed the text from the “*Dimensions of Language User*”, the next section will treat the TT from the “*Dimensions of Language Use*”.

Medium: As stated earlier, the ST is a written legal document to be sworn by new MPs. Consequently, the TT is *written to be spoken as if spoken*. It must be emphasised that the text aims primarily at providing a clear, precise and objective message to MPs. Beyond providing this message to MPs, the text also appeals to them to chart a certain course: to declare their loyalty to the Parliament before taking office as illustrated by the following statement: “*Moi ... Prends l’engagement solennel, devant les peuples africains, devant Dieu.*” (Appendix I, TT, sentence 1). It must emphasised that though the translator made a few changes: s/he did not do a word-for-

word translation. This could probably be because the translator had to ensure that the translation was consistent and produced according to the appropriate policies and terminology of the PAP.

Participation: Participation here is a *simple dialogue* between the PAP and the addressee, the MPs who are being directly addressed and instructed with regard to the oath of allegiance. This is evidenced by the use of the personal pronoun “*I*” (five times in the ST-English Appendix H). However, the active participation of MPs experienced through the use of “*I*” throughout the ST is, to some extent, toned down in the TT. As a result, the personal pronoun is used only once at the beginning of the target text: “*Moi ...*”, followed by action verbs in subsequent paragraphs (Appendix I, TT-French). The full participation and commitment of MPs is more pronounced in the ST when the personal pronoun “*I*” is repeated at the beginning of every other paragraph: “*I will perform*”, “*I will be faithful*”, “*I will promote*” (Appendix H, ST). Therefore, to some degree, this less involvement also has an impact on reader participation. It must however be emphasised that, generally, in a context such as this (oath/solemn declaration in French), the personal pronoun “*Nous*” is preferred to “*Moi*”.

Social role relationship: In spite of the fact that there is a less participation of MPs in the TT, this situation does not take away the asymmetrical nature of the text. In effect, the social role relationship observed in the ST between the PAP and MPs is fully maintained here. This is evidenced by the actual allegiance of MPs to the PAP, which is already illustrated from the beginning of the TT through the use of “*Prestation de Serment*” (Appendix I, TT).

Social attitude: A closer look at the TT shows that the formal and distant relationship between the PAP and the MPs is maintained in the TT. Put simply, the power of the PAP over its MPs is still noticeable. This administrative distance is clearly displayed because of the way the new MPs are instructed directly to swear an allegiance to the PAP before taking office. Put simply, the PAP is seen as a higher authority to which MPs must submit through a solemn declaration of allegiance. Further, the formal relationship between the MPs and the PAP is evidenced by the following statements:

“*Moi ..., Député au Parlement Panafricain;*

Prends l’engagement solennel, devant les peuples africains, devant Dieu:

(ii) *de servir avec loyauté et entière allégeance à l'Union Africaine, de préserver, protéger et défendre l'Acte Constitutif de l'Union Africaine ...* ” (Appendix I, TT). Clearly, the MPs regard the PAP as the highest legislative body of the continent. Put simply, the PAP is above all national assemblies and parliaments.

Following are the application of the 10 language criteria to the ST and TT and the explanation of corresponding ratings in Tables 5 and 6.

I. Grammar: No errors have been identified in both ST and TT. Therefore this category is rated 5, which means Excellent.

II. Semantics: The first sentence of the translation (Appendix I, TT-French) introduces the notion of “*devant Dieu*” (before God) which was not mentioned in the original (Appendix H, ST-English).

- The first sentence of the TT, the notion of “*devant les peuples africains*” (Appendix I, TT) was also introduced, and is not mentioned in the original (Appendix H, ST).
- “*So help me God* (in case of an Oath)” or “*I so affirm*” (Appendix H, ST) is rendered by “*Je le jure* (serment)” (Appendix I).
- Finally, the last but one line of the ST “*Signed The Member*” (Appendix H, ST) is rendered by “*Nom et Prénom du Membre*” (Appendix I, TT). Since the full name of the Member is mentioned and written on the first line of the sentence, in practice, it is only the signature that should now be required on the last but one line of the document. This category is rated 3.

III. Punctuation: This category has not recorded any punctuation errors. It is therefore rated 5.

IV. Spelling: There have not been any spelling mistakes in this category as well. Consequently, it is rated 5.

V. Mismatches: Same comment as above.

VI. Additions: Same comment as above.

VII. Omissions: Same comment as above.

VIII. Accuracy: This translation is faithful and accurate. It is rated 5.

IX. Cohesion: Sentences are used logically in both ST and TT. Further cohesive devices are used. Both ST and TT are rated 5 in Table 6.

X. Coherence: The ST reads smoothly and coherently so does the TT. They are rated 5.

From Tables 5 and 6 below, it can be deduced that apart from Semantics (category II), which is rated 3, all the other categories are rated 5. This means that both texts have been well-written. So far, this is the highest rating among the four texts assessed.

4.3.4. Statement of quality

In the light of the discussion above, the translator used a *covert* translation strategy in the translation process. As a result, the translator applied what House refers to as a *cultural filter* (1977: 29).

According to House, the main purpose of a *covert* translation is to “recreate, reproduce or represent in the translation text the function of the original in its linguacultural framework and discourse world” (1997: 114). House further observes that a *covert* translation “is thus at the same time psycholinguistically less complex than *overt* translation and more deceptive” (1997: 114). Put simply, House seems to suggest that, to some extent, in a *covert* translation, the translator attempts “to cheat and to be hidden behind his feat, the transmutation of the original” (1997: 114).

House (1997) further holds that a *covert* translation is so “skillfully integrated into the fabric of the text that the seams do not show” (1997: 114). This is particularly true with respect to the TT

in which words and expressions were carefully thought through by the translator in order to convey the original message clearly, while at the same time s/he tried, as much as possible, not to distort the meaning of the original message. This notwithstanding, here are a few variations in meaning in the target text:

- “*Oath/ Solemn Declaration of Allegiance*” (Appendix H, ST, heading) is translated by “*Prestation de Serment*” (Appendix I, TT, heading);
- “*T* ... (full name of Member) (Appendix H, ST), which is rendered by “*Moi ... Député au Parlement Pan-africain*” (Appendix I, TT, paragraph I);
- “*So help me God/ I so affirm*” (Appendix H, ST) by “*Je le jure (Serment)*” (Appendix I, TT, paragraph III).

Still with respect to strategy, House (1997) observes that as the main purpose of a *covert* translation is to produce a functional equivalent target text; it follows logically that the translator may, if the need arises, introduce “changes at the levels of LANGUAGE/TEXT and REGISTER” (1997: 114). Consequently, *covert* translations, generally, tend to look like originals on the account of the level of distance maintained by the translator between the original and the translation. House admits that this situation may pose ethical challenges in translation because of what she terms: “[t]his characteristic belying of their origins in *covert* translation texts creates ethical problems because of the deception of the origins of the texts” (1997: 114). In this context, it is therefore difficult to differentiate between the original and the translated texts since both seem distant from each other because they look like originals.

Moreover, a pragmatic equivalence was used in the TT, because the translator attempted to match the function of the text with what MPs are expected to do before assuming their functions at the PAP. Consequently, it may be argued that the translation adequately meets the ‘communicative function’ of the original text. As House puts it: “in translation we do not operate with sentences at all but with utterances, i.e., units of discourse characterized by their use-value in communication” (1997: 31). Put differently, House argues that in some circumstances, if the need arises, “it is both possible and necessary to aim at equivalence of pragmatic meaning at the expense of semantic meaning. Pragmatic meaning overrides semantic meaning in these cases” (1997: 31).

The ST, an *Oath/Solemn Declaration of Allegiance*, is an addendum to the Protocol to the Treaty Establishing the African Economic Community Relating to the Pan African Parliament. This was clearly stipulated in Article 13 of the Protocol Establishing the AEC, which was discussed above. However, it was treated and translated as a separate document (Appendix F, ST, Article 13: *Oath Declaration of Office*, p 8).

With the exception of category II (Semantics) which is rated 3, the remaining 9 categories are each rated 5 (Excellent). On the whole, the language used in both ST and TT is simple, clear, formal and strictly official in comparison to informal or unofficial. Put simply, this is mainly because of the absence of slang, the accessibility of the language, the lack of emotive language, and the neutral tone of the text. Both ST and TT are well-written and are the best among the four texts assessed. Perhaps the shortness of the two texts (one page each) explains the excellent rating they enjoy. A brief summary of the results of the analysis is provided in Tables 5 and 6 below.

Linguistic features of a text	Original text (1 page)	Translation (1 page)
Tenor	The PAP engages new MPs. Power: authoritative relation between the PAP and MPs is shown.	. The PAP engages new MPs. Power: authoritative relation between the PAP and MPs is shown.
Field	New MPs of the PAP being directed to swear a Solemn/Oath of Allegiance before assuming office.	New MPs of the PAP being directed to swear a Solemn/Oath of Allegiance before assuming office.
Mode	<i>Solemn/Oath of Allegiance</i> is a written legal and binding text to be sworn by new MPs to the PAP.	<i>Prestation de Serment</i> is a written legal and binding text to be sworn by new MPs to the PAP.
Register	Unmarked (not-specific to a particular linguistic region).	Unmarked (not-specific to a particular linguistic region).
Genre	Political and administrative text.	Political and administrative text.
Language	Unmarked, formal, conventional targeted at a native English speaker- devoid of any old words/expressions.	Unmarked, formal, conventional target at a native French speaker- devoid of any old words/expressions.

Table 5: Linguistic features of ST and TT

Language category	Original text	Translation	Rating (1-5)
Grammar	√	√	5
Semantics	X	X	3
Punctuation	√	√	5
Spelling	√	√	5
Mismatches	√	√	5
Additions	√	√	5
Omissions	√	√	5
Accuracy	√	√	5
Cohesion	√	√	5
Coherence	√	√	5

Table 6: Language errors

A 5- points scale for rating both ST and TT

- (1) Poor (2) Fair (5) Excellent
(3) Good (4) Very Good

4.4. Text Three: *Projet d'Allocution du Président de la Commission, Dr Jean Ping (See French ST at Appendix J)*

The ST is a political speech made by the former AU Chairperson, Dr Jean Ping. Written in French, it consists of 13 pages and can be found at Appendix J. The TT is in English and consists of 8 pages; the TT is provided at Appendix K. The analysis of the discourse begins with the linguistic features of a text followed by an explanation of the eight dimensions plus the ten criteria in the language category used in the assessment of the ST and TT. A brief summary of the results of the analysis is available in Tables 7 and 8.

4.4.1. Analysis of the original text (See Appendix J)

Analysis of the source text from the “Dimensions of Language User”.

Geographical origin: The Statement of the former Chairperson of the AU is unmarked as it does not use a dialect limited to a particular geographical location of AU Member States.

Social class: The ST emanates from the Office of the former Chairperson of the AUC, which is the executive organ of the AU. The speech may have been drafted by close aides to the Chairperson and translated by translators of the AUC. The speech should be understood by the average, middle and highly educated native speaker of French.

Time: Reading the ST, it is clear that it uses contemporary French because no words or expressions seem to suggest that it uses French from an earlier period. The language is personal, marked by the use of personal and possessive pronouns such as *Je* (I) *nous* (we) *notre/nos* (our) *vosre* (your). A few examples: “*Je vous souhaite ... du continent qu'en dehors*” (Appendix J, ST, paragraph I, pp. 1-2). « *Je remercie le Gouvernement ... nos séjours*” (Appendix J, ST, paragraph II, p 2), « *Je salue son Altesse ... et l'UA de l'autre* » (Appendix J, ST, paragraph IV, p 2). “*Notre appréciation ... Russie et de la Serbie*” (Appendix J, ST, paragraph VII, p 3), « *Je suis encouragé ... des conflits* » (Appendix J, ST, paragraph XXIV, p 8) « *Nos travaux ... Guinée*

Bissau et au Mali » (Appendix J, ST, paragraph IX, p 3), « ... nous nous sommes employés ... problématique du développement » (Appendix J, ST, paragraph XVI, pp 5-6), « Enfin, nous ne saurions ... ce phénomène » (Appendix J, ST, paragraph XXXV, p 11).

This section analyses the ST from the “*Dimensions of Language Use*”.

Medium: The Statement is a spoken discourse and falls under the *simple medium* category. Consequently, it may be treated as *written to be spoken*.

Participation: Participation here is a simple monologue between the former Chairperson of the AUC and the addressees: Heads of State and Government of the AU and foreign dignitaries. However, the reactions of the latter (dignitaries) can neither be immediately felt nor taken into consideration by the former (former AUC Chairperson). Consequently, there is an indirect addressee participation. The ST is formal (as opposed to an informal one); it is personal and is specifically directed at Heads of State and Government¹⁰ of the AU and foreign delegations. The Statement is audience-focused and seen as a general overview of the political and socio-economic situation of Africa. This is evidenced by the following declarations made by the former Chairperson of the AUC: “*Les transitions démocratiques en Égypte, en Libye et en Tunisie ... en Afrique*” (Appendix J, ST, paragraph XXIII, p 8), “*Je suis encouragé par les avancées ... émergeant de conflits* », (Appendix J, ST, paragraph XXIV, p 8), « *Je me dois aussi de saluer ... la feuille de route* » (Appendix J, ST, paragraph XXV, p 8), « *Il reste que le continent continue ... les dirigeants du continent* » (Appendix J, ST, paragraph XXVI, pp. 8-9), “*Les relations entre le Soudan et le Soudan du Sud ... deux États viables* » (Appendix J, ST paragraph XXVII, p 9), “*La situation au Mali ... la crise au Mali*” (Appendix J, ST, paragraph XXIX, p 10), etc. Further, the following statements were made regarding the socio-economic situation of the continent: “*S’agissant de note continent ... de la période sous examen*” (Appendix J, ST, paragraph IX, 2nd sentence, p 3), « *Il vous souviendra que ... vous aviez adoptée* » (Appendix J, ST, paragraph X, p 3-4), « *[Les défis à relever sont énormes ... institutionnel efficace]* » (paragraph XI, p 4), « *Pour sa part ... au niveau du continent* »

¹⁰ Heads of State and Government is written as such in AU official documents consulted by the researcher (see Appendix M, p 1).

(Appendix J, ST, paragraph XII, p 4). « Le développement de l’Afrique ... en juillet 2010” (Appendix J, ST paragraph XIV, p 5), “À cet égard ... sur les économies et les collectivités vulnérables » (Appendix J, ST paragraph XVII, p 6).

Social role relationship: The ST displays features of a symmetrical relationship. In such a context, as the Head of the executive organ of the AU, the former Commission Chairperson addressed Heads of State and Government and foreign delegations as his peers; therefore, the relationship may be said to be symmetrical. The Statement is a simple monologue, a one-directional speech (coming from the former Chairperson of the AUC to Heads of State and Government and foreign delegations). It must be noted that the AUC is the “Secretariat of the Union entrusted with executive functions”. The AUC is made up of 10 officials: a Chairperson, a Deputy Chairperson and eight (8) Commissioners and staff members and has 10 portfolios (AU website www.africa-union.org).

Social attitude: This parameter indicates the social position of the author of the message. There is proximity between the former Chairperson of the AUC and the Heads of State and foreign delegations as the former addresses the latter as his peers. This results in some kind of formality between the two parties (House, 1997: 41). In this context, the ST uses a formal style; the political speech delivered by the former Chairperson of the AU is well-planned, well-researched and well-written. From House’s perspective: “[f]ormal texts are well-structured, elaborate, logically sequenced, and strongly cohesive” (1997: 43-44). This is very important given the fact that as a steward of the AU, it is the duty of the AUC to report clearly and in a consistent manner to leaders of the continent as well as foreign delegations about the political and socio-economic situation of Africa. The 19th Ordinary Session was therefore the appropriate platform for the Chairperson of the AUC to perform such a duty.

4.4.2. Statement of function

The ST performs an ideational function since it provides the former AUC Chairperson with the opportunity to give a comprehensive report to Heads of State and Government and foreign

delegations about Africa. Personal and possessive pronouns: “*Je*” (I), *nous* (we/us), *vous* (you) *notre/nos* (our) and *votre/vos* (your) were used frequently throughout the text (Appendix J, ST).

It must be noted that the Statement is divided into 39 paragraphs, some of which are relatively long, particularly paragraph XXXV (94 words, Appendix J, ST, p 11), paragraph XXXVI (75 words, Appendix J, ST, p 12) and paragraph XXXVIII (the longest with 122 words, Appendix J, ST p 12).

The remaining are:

Paragraph III “ ... *Permettez-moi ... en cours en Egypte*” (52 words, Appendix J, ST-French, p 2).

Paragraph IV “*Je salue ... et l’UA de l’autre*” (64 words, Appendix J, ST p 2).

Paragraph V: “*Je me réjouis ... l’Union en Afrique du Sud*” (67 words, Appendix J, ST, p 2).

Paragraph VII : « *En plus des ... la Russie et de la Serbie* » (66 words, Appendix J, ST, p 3).

Paragraph VIII : «*Enfin, ... plus de 100 personnes* » (51 words, Appendix J, ST, p 3).

Paragraph IX: « *S’agissant ... Guinée Bissau et au Mali* » (49 words, Appendix J, ST, p 3).

Paragraph X: « *Les présentes assises ... aviez adoptée* » (51 words, ST, Appendix J, p 4),

Paragraph XI : « *Dans leur rapport ... institutionnel efficace* » (66 words, Appendix J, ST, p 4).

Paragraph XIII: « *Des efforts ... l’Afrique de l’Est* » (55 words, Appendix J, ST, p 5) .

Paragraph XIV: “*Aussi ... juillet 2010*” (50 words, Appendix J, p 5).

Paragraph XVII: “*Je relèverais ... collectivités vulnérables*” (68 words, Appendix J, ST, p 6).

Paragraph XXVI: “*Si ces dernières ... dirigeants du continent*” (46 words, Appendix J, ST, pp. 8-9).

Paragraph XXVII: “*Je me ... États viables*” (46 words, Appendix J, ST, p 9).

Paragraph XXIX : « *Il s’agit de ... il y a quelque jours* » (49 words, Appendix J, ST, p 9).

Paragraph XXX : « *Lorsque ... fournissons aujourd’hui* » (70 words, Appendix J, ST, p 10).

Paragraph XXXIII: « *En effet ... africains à l’indépendance* » (61 words, Appendix J, ST p 11).

Further, pronouns, demonstrative pronouns, conjunctives, especially additive and causal were used frequently throughout the ST. Again, coordinating conjunctions *et*, demonstrative pronouns *ce/cette* as well as both indefinite and definite articles *un, une le, la, l’ and les* were used

throughout the speech: “[*Les défis à relever ... le potentiel de l’Afrique ... à ce que ... sur les perspectives de l’Afrique pour l’année 2012, la CEA et l’UA ... à cet effet ... que l’avenir ... de l’Afrique ... de l’existence d’un leadership... et visionnaire ... la population autour d’un objectif commun et ... sur un cadre institutionnel efficace.*] » (Appendix J, ST, paragraph XI, p 4). It must be pointed out that definite articles may not in every context be treated as cohesive devices, but form an integral part of a grammatical requirement of a text.

4.4.3. Analysis of the target text (See Appendix K)

In this section, the TT is analysed from the perspective of “*Dimensions of Language User*”.

Geographical origin: By means of a specific dialect or language of a particular geographical location, this parameter may give a clue to the reader about the ‘origin’ of the ST. In this case, both the ST and TT display the same features: the language is unmarked and is not limited to any specific linguistic community of Member States of the AU.

Social class: Indicates the social position of the source of the message. The ST comes from the Office of the Chairperson of the AUC, which is the executive organ of the continental body. This TT should be read and understood by the average, middle class and highly educated native speakers of English.

Time: What matters here is the identification of specific words or expressions which suggest that the TT is either current or ‘archaic’. As it is, the TT used contemporary English. Put differently, no old-fashion words or expressions have been used in the text.

Having analysed the TT from the “*Dimensions of Language User*”, the following section assesses it from the “*Dimensions of Language Use*”.

Medium: The TT is a spoken discourse and falls under the *simple medium* category: *written to be spoken*; it aims primarily at providing a clear, precise and objective picture to Heads of State and Government and foreign delegations about the political and socio-economic situation of Africa.

Participation: The TT can be treated as simple monologue because it is a one-directional speech delivered by the former AUC Chairperson to AU Heads of State and Government who are not participating directly in the speech delivery process. Put simply, the speech aims at the audience without necessarily taking into account their reactions. Consequently, there is an indirect addressee involvement.

Social role relationship: The symmetrical relationship between the former Chairperson of the AUC and Heads of State and Government and foreign delegations was fully maintained throughout the translation. This is evidenced by the use of personal and possessive pronouns: “*Je*” (I), *nous* (we/us), *vous* (you) *nos* and *notre/ nos* (our), examples of which were given in the analysis above. This explains why the former head of the executive organ of the AU put himself on an equal footing with AU Heads of State and Government and foreign delegations. Consequently, no distance was maintained between the two parties.

Social attitude: As stated earlier, there is proximity between the former Chairperson of the AUC and Heads of State and Government and foreign delegations. This results in a level of formality between the two parties involved in this discourse. Further, the speech is well-planned and logically-structured. As House rightly puts it, formal texts “clearly demonstrate advance planning” (1997: 41- 42).

Though this dimension is not the main focus of the analysis, it must be pointed out that like the ST, long sentences were also found in the translation of the speech, especially in paragraph XXXV (87 words excluding the last sentence, Appendix K, TT p 7), paragraph XXXVI (65 words, Appendix K, TT p 7) and paragraph XXXVIII (beginning from “*Africa has many assets ... raw materials*” 75 words, Appendix K, TT, p 8).

Others are:

Paragraph IV: “*I hail ... and the AU on the other*” (68 words, Appendix K, TT pp. 1-2).

Paragraph V: “*I am also ... in South Africa*” (58 words, Appendix K, TT p 2).

Paragraph VIII: “*Finally ... more than 100 persons*” (45 words, Appendix K, TT p 2).

Paragraph IX: “*Your meeting ... particularly in North Africa*” (45 words, Appendix K, TT, p 2), “*With regard to ... Guinea Bissau and Mali*” (50 words, Appendix K, TT p 2).

Paragraph XI: “*In their Reports ... institutional frameworks*” (60 words, Appendix K, TT, p 3).

Paragraph XIII: “*Efforts ... East Africa region*” (60 words, Appendix K, TT p 3).

Paragraph XVII: “*I would like to ... and vulnerable communities*” (57 words, Appendix K, TT, p 4).

Paragraph XXX: “*When treasures ... we make today*” (66 words, Appendix K, TT, p 6).

Paragraph XXXIII: “*As a matter of fact ... by African countries*” (56 words, Appendix K, TT, p 2).

The next section applies the ten criteria set in the language category for the assessment of both ST and TT.

I. Grammar: The meaning of this sentence is quite unclear: “*I am also delighted by the presence ... whose influence further enhanced in May 2012 ...*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph V, p 2). The reader is not very sure about the real meaning of the sentence. This is because the TT is translated literally and there is a missing verb in the sentence. The rating for both ST and TT is 4.

II. Semantics: The following sentences are problematic: “*I express ... geared towards the future and mutually beneficial*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph VII, p 2), “*During the past months ... and have its voice heard ...*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XVI, p 4). The personal pronoun subject “*we*” was the main subject of the sentence. Therefore, using “*have its voice heard*” was completely misplaced. A suggested translation would be: “*During the past six months ... and have had our voice heard ...*”. Paragraph XI (Appendix J, ST, line 4, paragraph XI, p 4) « *Dans leur rapport sur les perspectives économiques de l’Afrique pour l’année 2012, la CEA et l’ UA ont formulé nombre de recommandations ...* » ; as it is, this sentence seems to suggest that it is only one report which was issued by both institutions (ECA/UA). However, in the TT, reports were made mention of: « *In their Reports on the economic prospects of Africa for 2012, the ECA and the AU made a number of recommendations ...* ». This category is rated 3.

III. Punctuation: A comma is missing after Somalia in the last but one sentence of paragraph XXXV: “*Finally ... Shaba in Somalia but which spreads ...*”, the correct form would be “*Finally ... Shaba in Somalia, but which spreads ...*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XXXV, p 7). The rating in this category is 4.

IV. Spelling: There is an inconsistent use of *North*. This word is used with a capital letter *N* in the last but one sentence of paragraph XXIX: “... *the authority of the State in the North of the country*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XXIX, p 6); however, in the first sentence of paragraph XXX, it is written with a lower case (*n*): “*I have ... in the north of the country ...*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XXX, p 6). This category is rated 4 in Table 8 below.

V. Mismatches: There have not been instances of mismatches between the ST and TT. This category is therefore rated 5.

VI. Additions: No additions have been made, particularly in the TT. From Table 8, the rating is 5, i.e., Excellent.

VII. Omissions: On page 1 (Appendix K, TT English, line 11, p 1) an *s* was omitted at the end of Representatives of International *Organisation*. Also, a comma was omitted after “*At the same time*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XVIII, p 4). Further, the last sentence of paragraph III, (Appendix J, ST, p 2), was omitted in the translation (Appendix K, TT, paragraph III, p 1). The following were identified (see ST Appendix J & TT Appendix K):

Paragraph III (Appendix J, ST, paragraph III, last sentence, p 2), the French sentence: “*Naturellement, je réitère aussi mes félicitations à la Présidente Joyce Banda du Malawi et prie son Vice-président ici présent, de les lui transmettre*” is omitted from (not found in) the English version of the Speech. This category is rated 3.

VIII. Accuracy: Compared to the ST, the TT is accurate. Again the rating is 5, i.e., Excellent.

IX. Cohesion: Logical connections were used between the ST and TT. This category is therefore rated 5 in Table 8.

X. Coherence: Both texts read coherently and smoothly. Here, the rating is also 5.

4.4.4. Statement of quality

A *covert* strategy was employed by the translator because of the ideational nature of the original speech which is to be as informative as possible about the political and socio-economic situation of the continent. The following declarations were made as far as the political situation on the continent is concerned: “*The issue of peace and security ... Peace and Security Council*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XX, p 4), “*Within the framework of the structural prevention ... of the Conference*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XXI, p 4), “*Significant progress ... at all stages*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XXII, p 5), “*The democratic transition in Egypt, Libya, and Tunisia ... in Africa*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XXIII, p 5). “*I am encouraged ... emerging from conflicts*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XXIV, p 5). The following sentences sum up the Chairperson’s position on the socio-economic situation of the continent: “*You will recall ... the Declaration you adopted*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph X, pp. 2-3), “*In their reports on the economic prospects ... an effective institutional framework*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XI, p 3), “*It is not necessary ... Summit in July 2010*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XIV, p 3), “*The UN Conference ... towards a green economy*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XVIII, p 4), etc. Consequently, the translator applied what House terms a *cultural filter* (see 2.1.2 p 20). This is because the translator tried as much as possible to convey the meaning of the speech of the former Chairperson by focusing primarily on the transmission of the information contained in the ST; further, the translator tried to find appropriate equivalence in the target language.

Moreover, a pragmatic equivalence was used in the English translation, because the translator attempted to match the function of the speech with the expectations of the audience (AU Heads of State and Government as well as heads of foreign delegations). Put simply, at an annual gathering of this nature, Heads of State and Government and foreign delegations expect to be informed about the way the continental body was run over the previous year; they also want to be briefed about the latest developments on the continent. Consequently, it may be argued that the speech adequately meets the ‘communicative function’ of the translation. As House remarks:

“[a]nd we can then consider a translation a primarily pragmatic reconstruction of its original” (1997: 31).

Like the original, the definite article *the*, the coordinating conjunction *and*, to a large extent, *this*, *their*: reference cohesion (demonstrative) were used throughout the text: “*Significant progress ... dealing with the conflicts affecting the African ... the most eloquent ... with the support of the rest ... when the necessary ... the course of events ... the prospects of peace ... I recommend the courage of the AMISOM ... their Somali ... the troops ... their efforts ... the ongoing ... with the people of Somalia ... their quest ... at all stages*” (Appendix K, TT, paragraph XXII, p 5).

The ST displays an expressive function as evidenced by the heavy use of the personal pronoun “*I*”. However, as the former Chairperson, Dr Ping, represented the AU, this aspect is almost effaced in the text itself as a whole.

The speech may be viewed as having an ideational function. This kind of text is what House refers to as “content-focus (vs an interpersonal focus)” (1997: 116). Interpersonal focus means in this context that not only does the text provide information to the audience, at the same time, it appeals to the emotions of the audience. Put differently, it can be said that the speech is much “more concerned with the transmission of information than with a consideration of the readers’ reception of this information as had been the case in the original ” (1997: 116). A closer analysis of the text shows that this function was maintained throughout both the ST and the TT.

Compared to the previous text (Two), only five categories: Mismatches (V), Addition (VI), Accuracy (VIII), Cohesion (IX) and Coherence (X) are rated 5 because no errors were identified in such categories. The remaining five: Grammar (I), Semantics (II), Punctuation (III), Spelling (IV) and Omissions (VII) are rated between 3 and 4. Tables 7 and 8 summarise the results of the analysis of both ST and TT.

Linguistic features of a text	Original text (13 pages)	Translation (8 pages)
Tenor	Proximity and symmetrical relationship between former Chairperson of the AUC and Heads of State and Government and foreign delegations.	Proximity and symmetrical relationship between former Chairperson of the AUC and Heads of State and Government and foreign delegations.
Field	Opening ceremony of the 19 th Ordinary session of the Heads of State and Government of the Assembly of the AU.	Opening ceremony of the 19 th Ordinary session of the Heads of State and Government of the Assembly of the AU.
Mode	<i>Projet d'Allocution</i> is a political speech delivered at the opening ceremony of the 19 th Ordinary session of the Assembly of the AU.	<i>Draft Statement</i> is a political speech delivered at the opening ceremony of the 19 th Ordinary session of the Assembly of the AU.
Genre	Political discourse.	Political discourse.
Register	Unmarked, not specific to a particular linguistic region, neutral.	Unmarked, not specific to a particular linguistic region, neutral.
Language	Unmarked, formal, conventional from a native French speaker (devoid of archaic words/expressions).	Unmarked, formal, conventional from a native English speaker (devoid of archaic words/expressions).

Table 7: Linguistic features of ST and TT

Language category	Original text	Translation	Rating (0-5)
Grammar	√	X	4
Semantics	X	X	3
Punctuation	√	X	4
Spelling	√	X	4
Mismatches	√	√	5
Additions	√	√	5
Omissions	X	X	3
Accuracy	√	√	5
Cohesion	√	√	5
Coherence	√	√	5

Table 8: Language errors

A 5- points scale for rating both ST and TT

- (1) Poor (2) Fair (5) Excellent
(3) Good (4) Very Good

4.5. Text Four: Lettre du Président (See French ST at Appendix L)

Drafted in French and English respectively, both ST and TT consist each of 4 pages. This political statement takes the form of an account of the stewardship of the former AUC Chairperson, Dr Jean Ping, and his team. The ST can be found at Appendix L and the TT at Appendix M. The analysis of *Lettre du Président* begins with the six linguistic features of a text followed by an explanation of the eight dimensions of *language user* and *language use* in relation to the assessment of both texts plus the application of the ten criteria set in the language category. Tables 8 and 10 below summarise briefly the results of the analysis of both texts.

4.5.1. Analysis of the original text

The ST is first analysed from the “*Dimensions of Language User*”.

Geographical origin: *Lettre du Président* is unmarked as it does not use a dialect restricted to a particular geographical location of AU Member States.

Social class: *Lettre du Président* originates from the Office of the Chairperson of the AUC, which is the executive organ of the African Union. The text may have been written by close aides to the Chairperson and translated by translators of the AUC.

Time: *Lettre du Président* employs contemporary French because no words or expressions seem to suggest that it belongs to an earlier period. The language is personal, simple, clear, accessible and unambiguous as evidenced by: “*Quand mes collègues et moi ... ambitieux et partant difficile*” (Appendix L, ST, paragraph II, p 1), “*Tel était le mandat qui nous a été assigné par l’Assemblée et le Conseil exécutif*” (Appendix L, ST, paragraph II, 1), “*... nos priorités ont été clairement identifiés et nous avons eu agir en faisant face à de nombreux défis systémiques* » (Appendix L, ST, paragraph II, p 1), etc.

The following section analyses the ST from the “*Dimensions of Language Use*”.

Medium: Lettre du Président, the mouthpiece of the Chairperson of the AUC, is a written document and can be classified under the *simple medium* category. Consequently, it can be treated as *written to be read*.

Participation: Lettre du Président is a simple monologue, a one-directional discourse from the former AUC Chairperson to the 54 Member States of the AU. As mentioned above, the primary objective of *Lettre du Président* is to educate, inform and, above all, account for the stewardship of the AUC. The text is characterised by the following declarative sentence: “Après trois ans et demi de chemin parcouru, en tant que responsable de la Commission ... domaines.” (Appendix L, ST, paragraph VI, p 1). *Lettre du Président* is more concerned with “the transmission of information than with a consideration of the readers’ reception of this information” (House, 1997: 116). Consequently, there is an indirect participation on the part of Africans who constitute the readership (Member States of the AU, public and private institutions, NGOs, media, etc.) of this mouthpiece of the AUC.

Social role relationship: Without doubt, *Lettre du Président* displays features of a symmetrical relationship between the former AUC Chairperson and the peoples of Africa. Therefore, it is seen as providing an overview of the actions and policies implemented by the AUC over the three and a half years period mandate. The main focus of the mouthpiece is therefore to make accurate information available as much as possible: « D’importantes initiatives ont été prises ... Chefs d’État et de Gouvernement. » (Appendix L, ST, paragraph VI, p 1), « En 2009 et pour la première fois ... de l’UA et ses processus. » (Appendix L, ST, paragraph VIII, p 2), « Nous avons insisté ... réguliers des directeurs. » (Appendix L, ST, paragraph IX, p 2), « Dans la même perspective ... de l’UA » (Appendix L, ST, paragraph X, p 2), « Le plus grand défi auquel ... négatif sur l’organisation. » (Appendix L, ST, paragraph XVI, p 2), « Ce n’était pas une mince affaire ... en Somalie (AMISOM). » (Appendix L, ST, paragraph XVII, pp 2-3).

Social attitude: There is proximity between *Lettre du Président* and the readership it is expected to serve. This results in the official format in which the account of stewardship of the AUC is presented. Consequently, it can be treated as *formal*. Further, the ST combines both formal and

frozen styles. With respect to formal style, a lot of planning went into the production of the *Lettre du Président*. As a result, it is presented in a consistent and well-structured manner. As concerns the frozen style, House argues that it aims primarily at the “education and edification of the readers”. As stated earlier, the ultimate goal of this ‘mouthpiece’ is to inform, educate and edify Africans in general about the management of the continental body by the AUC. There is no social distance between the former Chairperson of the AUC and Africans (the 54 Member States of the AU). Therefore, the AUC is perceived as accounting for its stewardship as illustrated by the following declarations of the former AUC Chairperson: “*Nous ne nous sommes pas ... sur les resultants.*” (Appendix L, ST, paragraph XVIII, p 3), “*En outre ... à notre demande*” (Appendix L, ST, paragraph XIX, p 3), “*La focalisation sur le développement ... des normes de gestion appropriés.*” (Appendix L, ST, XXV, p 3), “*La connexion internet ... la productivité.*” (Appendix L, ST, paragraph XXVI, p 3), “*Des efforts ... sur le terrain.*” (Appendix L, ST, paragraph XXVII, p 3).

4.5.2. Statement of function

Since the main focus of *Lettre du Président* is to provide comprehensive information on efforts made by the AUC to address the numerous challenges the continent is faced with, the ST therefore performs an ideational function. To this end, the language used is personal, simple and easy to read.

Lettre du Président is divided into about 34 paragraphs articulated around eight main points: **(1) Prodiguer les directives, (2) Créer les instruments, (3) Garantir les ressources, (4) Regagner la confiance, (5) Consolider les systèmes, (6) Gérer les ressources humaines, (7) Développer la technologie, et (8) Assurer la liaison avec les intervenants.** It consists of paragraphs with relatively short sentences with the exception of:

Paragraph XII: « *Conformément à ... préparation du budget.* » (102 words, Appendix L, ST, p 2).

Paragraph XIII: « *Nous avons ... les objectifs fixés.* » (67 words, Appendix L, ST, p 2).

Paragraph XX: « *Après vingt ans ... se fera progressivement.* » (45 words, Appendix L, ST, p 3).

Paragraph XXI : « *Récemment ... les avantages ainsi que les congés.*» (72 words, Appendix L, ST, p 3).

Paragraph XXV : « *La focalisation ... de gestion appropriée.* » (92 words, Appendix L, ST, p 4).

The remaining are :

Paragraph III : « *Une fois ... et la sécurité pour ses habitants.* » (65 words, Appendix L, ST, p1).

Paragraph IV : « *Deuxièmement ... de l'avantage comparatif.* » (55 words, Appendix L, ST, p1).

Paragraph VIII (**I. Prodiguer les directives**) « *En adoptant ... de l'UA et ses processus.* » (52 words, Appendix L, ST, p 2).

Paragraph X (**I. Prodiguer les directives**) « *Dans la même perspective ... de l'UA.* » (56 words, ST, p 2).

Paragraph XI (**II. Créer les instruments**) « *En vue d'aider... du travail.* » (53 words, Appendix L, ST, p 2).

Paragraph XVII (**IV. Regagner la confiance**) « *Je tiens ici ... Africaine en Septembre 2011.* » (54 words, Appendix L, ST, pp. 2-3).

Paragraph : XXVII (**VII. Développer la technologie**) « *Des efforts ... travail sur le terrain.* » (74 words, Appendix L, ST, p 4).

It must be pointed out that coordinating conjunctions *et* (and) and *comme* (as/since), and the definite and indefinite articles *le, la* and *l'* (the) and *un/une* (a) were also used throughout *Lettre du Président*: “*Le Bureau ... de la Commission ... un role ... entre les et les departments, et en apportant l'appui ... la Commission ... celles ... la Direction ... l'information et de la Communication ... le niveau ... les intervenants ... la connaissance ... la Commission ...* » (Appendix L, ST, paragraph XXIX, p 4). The ST begins with an introduction followed by a gradual development of the main themes articulated around eight main points and ends with a conclusion, which sums up the achievements of the AUC. The conclusion also highlights challenges which lie ahead of the Commission.

4.5.3. Analysis of the target text (See Appendix M)

In this section, *Letter from the Chairperson* is analysed from the “*Dimensions of Language User*” using the following parameters:

Geographical origin: From the discussion above, it may be argued that both the French and English versions display the same features. For example, the language is unmarked, that is, not representative of a dialect of any specific linguistic community of the AU.

Social class: *Letter from the Chairperson* emanates from the Office of the Chairperson of the AUC, which is the executive organ of the continental body. As regards *register*, *Letter from the Chairperson* was written by close aides to the former Chairperson and translated by translators of the AUC. It should be understood by the average, middle class and highly educated native speakers of English.

Time: No specific words or expressions are found in *Letter from the Chairperson* that may suggest that the TT comes from an earlier period. Therefore, *Letter from the Chairperson* is contemporary.

Having analysed *Letter from the Chairperson* from the “*Dimensions of Language User*”, the next section will treat the TT from the “*Dimensions of Language Use*”.

Medium: *Letter from the Chairperson* is a written text and can be classified under *simple medium*, i.e., *written to be read*.

Participation: *Letter from the Chairperson* is a simple monologue, a one-directional discourse, (an account of stewardship) from the former Chairperson of the AUC to Africans. Consequently, there was an indirect participation, if not any, on the part of the addressees (54 nations of Africa), who constitute the readership of this ‘mouthpiece’.

Social role relationship: The symmetrical relationship between the former AUC Chairperson and the peoples of Africa was maintained throughout *Letter from the Chairperson* as seen through the use of personal and possessive pronouns: *I*, *we*, *my (colleagues and I)*, *our*: “*When my colleagues and I ... systemic challenges.*” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph II, p 1), “*We insisted on ... with Directors.*” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph IX, p 2), “*As important, we made ... objectives of the AU.*” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph X, p 2), “*But, I am glad ... in September 2011.*”

(Appendix M, TT, paragraph XVII, p 3), “*Not only did we tackle ... happening again.*”
(Appendix M, TT, paragraph XVIII, p 3).

Social attitude: Letter from the Chairperson is very close to its readership. Like the ST, the TT also combines both formal and frozen styles. With respect to formal style, a lot of planning and research went into the production of the text. Consequently, it is presented in a consistent and well-structured manner. As concerns the frozen style, House argues that it aims primarily at the “education and edification of the readers”. Therefore, the ultimate objective of the ‘mouthpiece’ is to inform, educate and edify Africans in general about the management of the continental body by the AUC. The political relation binding the AUC Chairperson and the rest of Africa and the necessity to account for his stewardship are identifiable throughout *Letter from the Chairperson*, particularly in the formal format in which the ‘mouthpiece’ is presented.

In the next section are the application of the ten criteria set in the language category and the ratings (see Tables 9 and 10) with respect to the assessment of both ST and TT.

I. Grammar: Paragraph II (Appendix L, ST, line 6 p 1) “*nous avons eu à agir* » instead of “*nous avons eu agir*”, which did not mean much grammatically. This category is rated 4.

II. Semantics: The phrase “ ... the principles of *complementarily, subsidiary and comparative advantage*” does not make much sense, particularly the adverb *complementarily* used (Appendix M, TT, paragraph IV, line 3, p 1). Further, on line 10, the phrase, “*une place de élevée*”, seems problematic because there is no such thing in French. The rating in this category is 3 for both texts.

III. Punctuation: The first paragraph of *Letter From The Chairperson* ends without a full stop: “*Change is often ... doing things*” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph III, p 1).

Further, in Paragraph XXXII (**Conclusion:** Line 9) a full stop was omitted after operations “ ... *to our operations Yet ...*”. The correct form is “ ... *to our operations. Yet ...*”. The two texts are rated 4 in this category.

IV. Spelling: “In the same vein ... have been *negotiated* ... ” was spelt with a *c* instead of a *t*. The correct form therefore will be “*In the same vein ... have been negotiated ...*” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph XV, line 1, p 2). Further, paragraph VI (Appendix L, ST, line 3, p 1) “*aux vœux*” is preferable to “*aux veux*”. The rating in this category is 3 for both texts.

V. Mismatches: There have not been any mismatches in this category between both texts. The rating is therefore 5.

VI. Additions: No additions have been made in this category, particularly with respect to the translation. As a result, both texts are rated 5.

VII. Omissions: Paragraph XVII (Appendix M, TT, line 3, p 3): a *t* was omitted in “ ... *the leadership of he Deputy Chairperson*”. The correct form is “ ... *the leadership of the Deputy Chairperson*”. Further, line 7 of the conclusion ends with a full stop (Appendix L, ST, p 4); however, line 8 begins with a lower case (i) “*il est utile*”, instead of ‘*Il est utile*’ (an upper case I). The rating here is 3 for both texts.

VIII. Accuracy: After comparing closely both ST and TT, one can conclude that the translation is accurate. The rating of the two texts in this category is 5.

IX. Cohesion: The ST and TT used cohesive devices such as cohesion (pronominal), reference cohesion (demonstrative) and reference cohesion (definite article). Further, the sentences are arranged logically. This category is rated 5.

X. Coherence: Both ST and TT read smoothly and coherently. The rating is 5 for both texts.

4.5.4. Statement of quality

As in the ST, the translator used a covert translation strategy in *Letter From The Chairperson*, specifically because of the ideational function of the ST. Consequently, the translator applied

what House terms a *cultural filter* (see **2.1.2**). As House puts it: “[a]nd we can then consider a translation a primarily pragmatic reconstruction of its original” (1997: 31).

Letter From The Chairperson aims primarily at educating, informing and, above all, accounting for the stewardship of the former Chairperson of the AUC and his team to the 54 nations of Africa as illustrated by the following statements: “ ... as the accountable officer of the Commission ... in competition.” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph VI, p 1), “For the first time in 2009 ... AU structures and processes.” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph VIII, p 2), “We insisted on weekly Commission meetings ... with Directors.” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph IX, p 2), “As important, we made it a priority ... objectives of the AU.” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph X, p 2), “In order to support ... availability of funds” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph XI, p 2), “The greatest challenge ... of the organisation” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph XVI, pp 2-3).

Letter From The Chairperson consists of relatively long sentences:

Paragraph XXI (**VI. Managing Human Resources**) “Recently ... Staff Leave and Holiday.” (56 words, Appendix M, TT, p 3).

Paragraph XXV (**VII. Leveraging Technology**) “The focus on ... guidelines and standards.” (68 words, Appendix M, TT, p 4).

Others are:

Paragraph III: “With the rightful ... and security for its people.” (54 words, Appendix M, TT, p 1).

Paragraph IV: “Secondly ... and comparative advantage.” (46 words, Appendix M, TT, p 1).

Paragraph X (**I. Giving Direction**) “As important ... objectives of the AU.” (46 words, Appendix M, TT, p 2).

Paragraph XI (**II. Creating Instruments**) “The budget ... availability of funds.” (49 words, Appendix M, TT, p 2).

Paragraph XVII (**IV. Regaining Trust**) “I would like ... September 2011.” (48 words, Appendix M, TT, p 3).

Paragraph XXX (**VIII. Liaison with Stakeholders**) “In order to ... and other activities.” (46 words, Appendix M, TT, p 4).

Letter from the Chairperson relies on the indefinite and definite articles *a*, *an* and *the*, the coordinating conjunction *and* as well as reference cohesive devices: pronominal, demonstrative: “*As important ... and involve ... and the Permanent ... on our programmes ... in a consistent ... a systemic ... the ambitious ... of the AU.*” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph X, p 2), “*We have ... the monitoring and ... and project managers and their staff ... a clear measure of their results ... This ... their ability ... the impact of their activities ... the required data ... their implementation ... the programme and project objectives.*” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph XIII p 2).

Also, pragmatic equivalence is used in *Letter from the Chairperson* as the translator attempted to convey the information as much as possible, or even tried to match the function of the text with what all the peoples of Africa expect the Chairperson and his team to do as stewards of the continental body.

Letter from the Chairperson is sender-oriented because it is intended to inform, educate and edify its readership about the stewardship of the AUC as illustrated by these statements: “*This is a very brief overview of some of the actions ... still room for growth and improvement.*” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph XXXI, p 4), “*Our ambition is to ... other organisations.*” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph XXXII, p 4), “*I would like here ... in the coming years.*” (Appendix M, TT, paragraph XXXIII, p 4). From the analysis above, it can be argued that *Letter from the Chairperson* fulfils its communicative purpose.

From all the analyses above, the last three categories: Accuracy (VIII), Cohesion (IX), Coherence (X) are again rated 5. Two other categories: Mismatches (V) and Additions (VI) are also rated Excellent. However, Grammar (I), Semantics (II), Punctuation (III), Spelling (IV) and Omissions (VII) are rated between 3 and 4. Put simply, there have been a few problems with such categories throughout the analyses of the four STs and TTs. Following is a brief summary of the results of the analysis of both ST and TT in Tables 9 and 10.

Linguistic features of a text	Original text (4 pages)	Translation (4 pages)
Tenor	Former Chairperson of the AUC in a close relationship with Member States.	Former Chairperson of the AUC in a close relationship with Member States.
Field	Former Chairperson of the AUC accounts for stewardship through <i>Lettre du Président</i> to Africa and beyond.	Former Chairperson of the AUC accounts for stewardship through <i>Lettre du Président</i> to Africa and beyond.
Mode	<i>Lettre du Président</i> is written: an overview of actions and policies implemented by AUC.	<i>Letter from the Chairperson</i> is written: an overview of actions and policies implemented by AUC.
Genre	Political ‘Mouthpiece’ of the AUC.	Political ‘Mouthpiece’ of the AUC.
Register	Unmarked, not specific to a particular linguistic region, neutral.	Unmarked not specific to a particular linguistic region, neutral.
Language	Unmarked, formal, conventional from a French mother tongue speaker devoid of archaic words/expressions.	Unmarked, formal, conventional from an English mother tongue speaker devoid of archaic words/expressions.

Table 9: Linguistic features of ST and TT

Language category	Original text	Translation	Rating (0-5)
Grammar	X	√	4
Semantics	X	X	3
Punctuation	√	X	4
Spelling	X	X	3
Mismatches	√	√	5
Additions	√	√	5
Omissions	X	X	3
Accuracy	√	√	5
Cohesion	√	√	5
Coherence	√	√	5

Table 10: Language errors

A 5- points scale for rating both ST and TT

- (1) Poor (2) Fair (5) Excellent
(3) Good (4) Very Good

4.6. Conclusion

This chapter assessed four documents and their translations from the AUC and the PAP. It must be pointed out clearly that this chapter does not pretend to make a prescriptive judgment about what constitutes good or bad translation in the two institutions based on the four STs and the assessed translations. Rather, it provided an in-depth analysis of how documents are translated in the two institutions. From the assessment, it is fair to argue that the four translations are not word-for-word translations; rather the translators resorted to pragmatic equivalence taking into consideration the political and socio-cultural realities of the 54 Member States of the AU. Even though the four texts are different in nature (treating different topics) and may have been translated by different translators, the approach to the translations remained consistent.

The fact that the translations remained consistent regardless of the fact that the four STs are different in nature and may have been translated by different translators explains why the approach to the analysis of the four texts was almost the same and sometimes repetitive. A few reasons account for this situation: First, the four STs and their TTs, as discussed above, displayed an ideational function, which is primarily aimed at informing the readership. As a result, each text contains objective, detailed and accurate information. Text one, for example, provided Member States of the OAU/AU with detailed information about the Protocol to the Treaty establishing the AEC relating to the PAP. Text two, an addendum to the Protocol mentioned above informed MPs of what they are expected to do before assuming their functions as new MPs of the PAP. Text three is a Statement of the former Chairperson of the AUC at the opening of the 19th Ordinary Session of the Assembly of the Union in Addis-Ababa. It provided the former Chairperson with the opportunity to report to Heads of State and Government and foreign delegations about the political and socio-economic situation of Africa. Text four, *Lettre du Président*, is the ‘mouthpiece’ of the Chairperson of the AUC. It is a medium used by Dr Jean Ping and his team to account for their stewardship of the continental body to Africa.

Second, translations are consistent and produced according to the specific and appropriate terminology and policies of the continental body, regardless of the fact that they may have been produced by different translators.

Third, since the translations are all products brought about by *covert* strategies (the main purpose of which is to inform), translators have applied what House calls a *cultural filter*.

5. CHAPTER FIVE: ANALYSIS, COMMENTARY, AND DISCUSSION OF FINDINGS AT THE AUC AND THE PAP

This chapter provides practical insight into the practice of translation at the AUC and the PAP. The chapter is divided into two main parts: the first part (section 5.1) analyses the data, the second part (section 5.2) comments on and discusses findings in each institution. The last part discusses some key issues in relation to the practice of translation in these two institutions (section 5.3).

5.1. Data analysis

The methodology adopted for this empirical research involves quantitative data-gathering using questionnaires (consisting of structured open-ended and closed-ended questions), qualitative data gathering through personal interviews, statistical as well as documentary research. 30 full-time and freelance translators and/or interpreters including a supervisor of the PAP were included in this research. Put simply, questionnaires were answered by a first group made up of 15 translators and/or interpreters of both the PAP and the AUC. The second group also consisting of 15 translators and/or interpreters of the AUC and the PAP including one supervisor of the PAP answered face-to-face interview questions. Therefore, all analyses presented in this chapter were based on a sample of 30 translators and/or interpreters from both the AUC and the PAP including one supervisor of the PAP. The research was based on translators specifically, but some respondents work as both translators and interpreters. This explains the use of the phrase “translators and/or interpreters” throughout the study.

In analysing the data collected, some demographic and background information of translators and/or interpreters at the AUC and the PAP was investigated. Some of the variables included in the questionnaires covered, for example, the number of years they had practised as translators and/or interpreters, the number of years they had worked for the AUC or the PAP, their qualifications, that is, if they are academically-trained translators or not and other relevant

information needed for this analysis (see Appendices A & B: Questionnaire/Interview–Translators). Moreover, a number of questions were asked about the types of strategies translators use, especially when translating difficult or technical documents. The analyses also examine how the information contained in the documents they translate is disseminated in Member States of the AU.

Both qualitative and quantitative data were used in the analyses (see Chapter Three: Methodology). The main reason for using both types of data was to ensure the reliability of the results of the analyses. Qualitative data used in these analyses do not involve complex calculations, and qualitative questions asked were analysed based on frequencies and percentages.

5.1.1. Number of years as translators/interpreters

The sampled respondents (regular and freelance) were asked how long they have practised as translators and interpreters. The table below shows that 11.5% of respondents have worked as translators and/or interpreters for 1-5 years while 57.7% have been in the profession for 5-10 years. 30.8% of them have worked for 10 years or more. It must be pointed out that in this section, four respondents failed to provide an answer. As a result, the analysis was based on a total number of 26 respondents at both the AUC and the PAP.

	n	%	Table 11: Respondents’ number of years working as Translators and Interpreters
1-5 years	3	11.5%	
5-10 years	15	57.7%	
10 years +	8	30.8%	
Total	26	100%	

Table 11 : Respondents’ number of years as translators and interpreters

Source: AU Translation Practice Questionnaire (2012)

5.1.1 Respondents' number of years with the AU

	n	%
1-5 years	5	19.2%
5-10 years	15	57.7%
10 years +	6	23.1%
Total	26	100.0%

Table 12: Respondents' number of years with the AU

Source: AU Translation Practice Questionnaire (2012)

Table 12 above shows that 19.2% of the respondents have been with the AU (AUC or PAP) for 1-5 years versus 57.7% who have worked for 5-10 years. The remaining 23.1% have however worked for the AU for 10 years or more. In this section, four respondents failed to provide answers to the specific questions asked. In the end, 26 respondents answered the question appropriately.

5.1.3 Translators/Interpreters' level of qualification

In an international organisation such as the AU, a translator/interpreter is expected to have at least a Masters Degree and 10 years relevant working experience. These factors are key requirements in most international institutions. This is to ensure that they are well equipped with the necessary skills and knowledge for effective job performance. One respondent failed to answer the question about qualifications and experience. As a result, the analysis was based on 29 respondents.

Chart 1 below shows that respondents have different levels of qualification. Out of the total number, 69.1% have qualifications in language related subjects (BA, MA, PhD and others) and the rest, representing 30.9%, are graduates from translation schools. Out of the 30.9%, 6.9% possess a PG Diploma in Translation, 10.3% have a BA, 10.3% have an MA in Translation and

3.4% a PhD in Translation. This indicates that all of the sampled respondents possess a language/translation qualification which is one of the key requirements for this position (see Appendix E: Job Advertisement Interpreter/Translator- Arabic-PAP/ADV/02/2012).

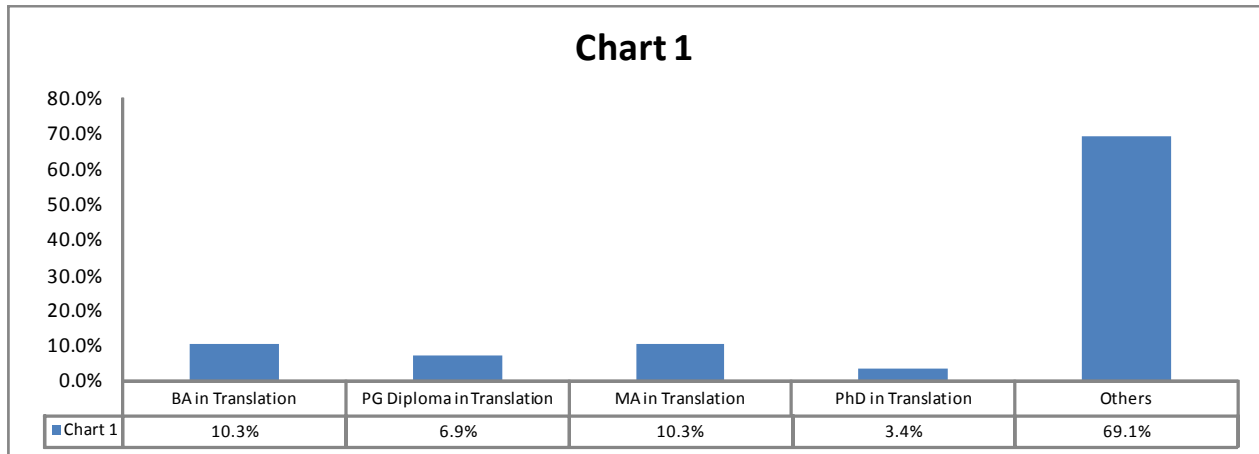


Chart 1: Respondents' level of qualification

Source: AU Translation Practice Questionnaire (2012)

5.1.4 Respondents' field of specialisation

	n	%
Political	1	3.4%
Economic	1	3.4%
Legal	1	3.4%
Financial	1	3.4%
General	24	83.0%
Others	1	3.4%
Total	29	100.0%

Table 13: Respondents' field of specialisation

Source: AU Translation Practice Questionnaire (2012.)

This section deals with the respondents' field or areas of specialisation. Table 13 above shows that 83% of respondents are general translators and/or interpreters, while only 3.4% of them are specialists in subject fields such as law, finance, politics, economics and others respectively.

Further, in order to establish how translators approach the translation of documents, questions 9 a), and b) were taken into account. The questions were: 9) a) What translation approach (es) does the Department use? b) What is/are your most preferred approach(es)? To the question “When translating do you keep to the original or you produce a more fluent translation?” (see Appendix Appendices A & B: Questionnaire/Interview–Translators).

5.1.2. Do translators keep closer to the ST or produce a more fluent translation?

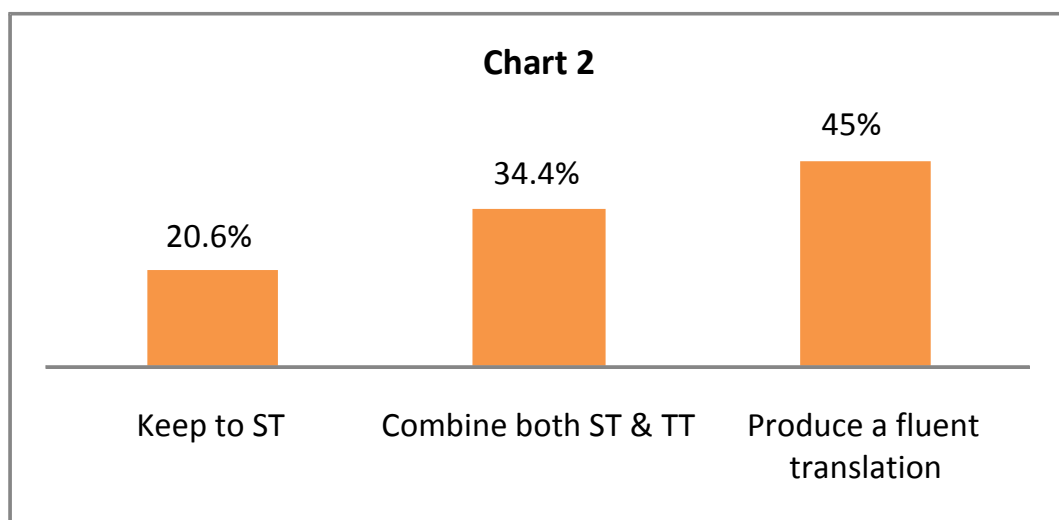


Chart 2: Do translators keep closer to the ST or produce a more fluent translation?

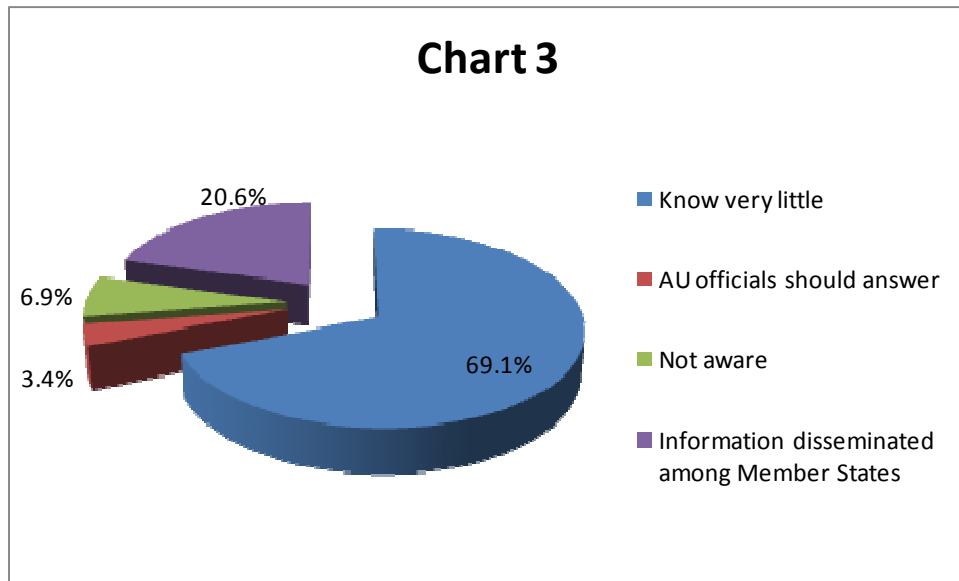
Source: AU Translation Practice Questionnaire (2012)

20.6% of the respondents indicated, as shown in chart 2 above, that they do not do word-to-word translations but try to keep to the ST while translating compared to 34.4% who indicated that during the translation process, they tried as much as possible to produce translations that are equivalent and in line with the policies and guidelines of the AU.

Further, the remaining 45% indicated that based on the ST they are able to produce a more fluent translation while admitting that the AU has specific guidelines and policies, which must be followed by all translators and/or interpreters. It must be noted that one datum is missing in this

section thus bringing the total number of respondents to 29. A substantial number of respondents indicated that experience in the job is key in dealing with difficult translations.

5.1.3. How is the information contained in translations disseminated in Member States?



Source: AU Translation Practice Questionnaire (2012)

Chart 3: Dissemination of information

From chart 3 above, 69.1% of respondents indicated that they knew very little about how information contained in the documents they translate is disseminated in Member States of the AU, while 6.9% said that they knew nothing at all about that issue. 3.4% said this question should be answered by AU officials (policy makers and implementers). However, 20.6% were of the view that many translated documents are distributed during meetings which take place in different Member States during the course of each year. They further indicated that the AU is in the process of working closely with national or regional parliaments and organisations on the continent so that MPs as well as officials of such institutions mentioned above could be invited to meetings as well as conferences of both the AUC and the PAP. According to them, this will help, to some extent, disseminate information effectively about the AU across the continent. One (1) datum was missing in this section; therefore the analysis was based on 29 respondents.

5.2. Discussion of the Findings

5.2.1. Translation at the PAP

Unlike the AUC and other international organisations, the PAP did not have until recently a Translation Department in the proper sense of the word. However, the Head of Documentation of the PAP coordinated all translation and interpreting related activities. This notwithstanding, the Translation Department and Documentation Unit will be used interchangeably with respect to the PAP for the purposes of this research. It must be emphasised that this study was conducted at a time the organisational structure of the PAP was being changed. Consequently, a professional translator has recently been appointed to head the Translation and Interpreting Department of the PAP. Administratively, the new Head of Translation and Interpreting appointed recently reports to the Deputy Clerk of Parliament in charge of Legislative Business (see Appendix P: Organogram of the PAP).

5.2.2. Mission and function of the Documentation Unit

As indicated above, until the appointment of a professional translator to head the unit, the Head of Documentation of the PAP was coordinating all translation and interpreting related activities at the PAP. The Head of Documentation, a professional in Events and Conference Management, holds the view that documentation and translation are intertwined, and therefore cannot be separated. In this respect, the Translation Department, among other things, performs the following functions:

- provides the link between translators and the various units of the PAP requesting the translation of documents;
- receives and acknowledges receipt of documents to be translated;
- prepares a checklist of working documents (ST and TT);
- identifies suitable translators and/or interpreters for the translation of documents;
- receives back translated texts and dispatches them to requesting units;

- stores both ST and TT in a database with appropriate file names bearing the initials of translators for easy identification and reference;
- identifies and hires freelance translators and/or interpreters (from the database of the network of freelance translators from Member States of the AU) for sessions of the PAP;
- prepares documents and related materials for sessions of the PAP;
- prepares any type of documents, materials and equipment required for conferences (PAP website: www.pan-african-parliament.org).

5.2.3. Mission and functions of the Translation Department of the AUC

The Translation Department of the AUC is under the direct supervision of the Directorate of Conferences Services. However, translators report directly to the Head of Translation while interpreters report to the Head of Interpretation. Among other things, the Translation Department of the AUC performs the following functions:

- organises, coordinates and supervises the activities of translators and related staff;
- designs and implements policies and plans regarding the activities of the Division;
- ensures the proper and faithful translation, revision, proof-reading and typing of documents;
- advises the Directorate on the acquisition of required translation tool software and reference books for the use of translators and revisers, with the ultimate objective of having a proper reference unit and database;
- develops a database of translators;
- ensures that a terminology database is developed by the linguistic units;
- assesses translators, revisers and secretaries and submit to the Directorate regular reports on their performance (AU website: www.africa-union.org).

5.2.4. Workforce of the Documentation Unit of the PAP

Currently, the Documentation Unit employs 16 members of staff of which 3 are permanent and 13 are support staff working on a contractual basis. These members of staff liaise with translators

and/or interpreters, follow up on pending jobs/translations, circulate translated documents for consumption during sessions of the PAP as well as making translated documents available to requesting units or departments of the PAP.

Members of Staff	Number
Permanent	3
Support staff (on contract)	13
Total number	16

Table 14: Members of staff of the Documentation Unit

5.2.5. Source and format of documents at the AUC and the PAP

Documents to be translated at the PAP originate mostly from the ‘source’. In the context of the PAP, ‘source’ refers to the Department of Legislative Business and the Department of Finance, Administration, Parliamentary Relations, while documents to be translated at the AUC come from the 8 Commissions and other departments, directorates, sections or units of the AUC. Usually, documents to be translated are in four main formats: Microsoft Word, Power Point, PDF or Excel (financial documents). Such documents to be translated are sent through the Translation Department of the PAP, and the Translation Department of the AUC respectively. Usually, documents are sent as a pack and are mostly minutes of previous meetings, protocols, treaties and agreements, speeches and others.

5.2.6. Freelance translators and outsourcing of documents

The AU (the AUC and the PAP) works with a network of seasoned professional freelance translators and interpreters from all Member States of the AU. These professionals have a proven track record and are familiar with the specific terminology of the AU. At the PAP, the services of these professionals are mostly needed during special sessions and other important meetings. At the AUC, freelance translators and/or interpreters are available during special meetings of the Commission such as the Annual Ordinary and Extraordinary meetings of Heads of State and

Government of the Union. It must be emphasised that the AUC currently employs 12 regular translators and 12 translators on a short-term basis (see Table 16). In the case of the PAP, it convenes its sessions at least twice a year, while the Annual Ordinary Assembly of Heads of State and Government takes place at the AUC in the middle of each year, normally in July. Because the AU, of which the PAP is the legislative organ, works in 6 languages, approximately 18 translators (an average of 3 per language) and about 70 interpreters (an average of 10 per language) are available during sessions of the PAP and during special meetings of the AUC respectively.

5.2.7. Types of documents translated at the AUC and the PAP

According to Joscelyne: “[a] translation department in any international organization (or for that matter in any standard in-house translation service, private or public) is expected to handle almost any type of document, from half-page memoranda to an occasional 900-page report” (2000: 89). The PAP and the AUC are no exception to the rule. The PAP produces various types of documents covering the work of all its ten Permanent Committees:

- The Committee on Rural Economy, Agriculture, Natural Resources and Environment.
- The Committee on Monetary and Financial Affairs.
- The Committee on Trade, Customs and Immigration Matters.
- The Committee on Co-operation, International Relations and Conflicts Resolution.
- The Committee on Transport, Industry, Communications, Energy, Science and Technology.
- The Committee on Health, Labor and Social Affairs.
- The Committee on Education, Culture, Tourism and Human Resources.
- The Committee on Gender, Family, Youth and People with Disability.
- The Committee on Justice and Human Rights.
- The Committee on Rules, Privileges and Discipline.

In addition, translators and/or interpreters are expected to translate and interpret during other meetings such as Committee Meetings, Plenary Sessions, Speakers’ Conferences, Joint Meetings, Regional Caucuses, Bureau Meetings, Orientation Meetings for new MPs, etc.

Therefore, this presupposes that the types of documents produced by the PAP cover a number of different areas: politics, law, finance, economy, health, agricultural development, climate change, trade, and others. It must be emphasised that, on average, each regular translator is expected to translate about 2000 words per day; this heightens the workload problem of translators.

Translators at the AUC translate documents produced by the following Commissions, Directorates and Departments:

- Commission for Peace and Security;
- Commission for Political Affairs;
- Commission for Infrastructure and Energy;
- Commission for Social Affairs;
- Commission for Human Resources, Science and Technology;
- Commission for Trade and Industry;
- Commission for Rural Economy and Agriculture;
- Commission for Economic Affairs;
- Directorate of Legal Affairs;
- Directorate of Women Gender and Development;
- Civil Society and Diaspora.

From the perspectives above, given the fact that the AUC and the PAP have different committees and commissions and/or directorates and other special meetings mentioned earlier, which must be covered by translators and/or interpreters, the question one may be tempted to ask is: Are 4 translators and/or interpreters sufficient for an international institution such as the PAP when the AUC employs at least 24 translators? Further, most translators (regular and freelance) admit that even if the AU has to recruit more translators and/or interpreters, it may be difficult for the AU to do so mainly for financial reasons. Further, it may be a herculean task for translators and/or interpreters at the AU to have specialised skills in all the areas mentioned above. Therefore, it may be fair to argue that the Translation Departments of the AUC, particularly that of the PAP are currently under-staffed considering the number of translations translators have to produce.

This workload problem needs to be addressed, if the AU wants to ensure effective and efficient communication among Member States.

5.2.8. Working languages and implications for the AU

According to Joscelyne: “[m]ost larger and older organizations differ from corporate users of language services in one way: built into their founding charters is a clause enumerating the organization’s official languages” (2000: 82). As a result, the AU works in six official languages: Arabic, English, French, Portuguese, Kiswahili and Spanish. The question arising from this therefore is: What does it mean for the AU made up of 54 Member States to have six official languages? It must be emphasised that in the AU, the language policy is implemented in such a way that only four out of the six official languages are used during committee meetings, namely Arabic, English, French and Portuguese. However, all the six official languages are used during plenary sessions. This is because plenary sessions are bigger meetings than committee meetings; they are attended by Heads of State and Government of the AU and foreign delegations.

What becomes of Kiswahili and Spanish? Are they being relegated to the background because they are regarded as less important than the other languages? Is it for financial reasons that these two languages are not used in all meetings? Or, is it because of a lack of specialised skills in these two languages that they seem less relevant or inferior? What about the countries where these languages are spoken? How will the AU be able to disseminate information to the people in countries in which the two languages are spoken? As Joscelyne remarks: “[t]he continued identity and existence of international organizations, however, is largely predicated on balancing the interests of nation-state members” (2000: 83). The question that arises is: How are individual interests of AU Members States being balanced?

Objectively, using six official languages has implications for the AU. First, it requires substantial financial commitment on the part of the continental body. Put simply, the AU has to recruit more translators and interpreters in each of the six languages. For example, a regular translator¹¹ at the PAP is paid an amount of US \$ 38,489.00 per annum plus other related entitlements (such as a

¹¹ The AU refers to full-time translators and/or interpreters as such (see Appendix E).

housing allowance and an education allowance) (see Appendix E: Job Advertisement Interpreter/Translator-Arabic- PAP/ADV/02/2012). It logically follows that the pay-roll bill of the AU will increase, should it decide to recruit specialist translators and interpreters in order to adequately cover all of its committee meetings, plenary sessions, commissions and council meetings as well as other important meetings mentioned earlier. As Roland puts it: “[t]here is no doubt that within any international organization, multiplicity of languages multiplies costs” (Roland, 1992: 134). For example, for financial reasons, the PAP currently employs only four translators who double up as interpreters. Put simply, if the PAP does not convene its sessions, the regular translators and/or interpreters concentrate on written translation tasks. However, when the PAP is in session, the regular translators become interpreters during meetings, while freelance translators brought from all AU Member States focus only on the translation of documents. It must be emphasised that currently the PAP has neither regular translators nor interpreters in Kiswahili and Spanish. Therefore, the institution has to rely on the services of freelance translators and interpreters. To some extent, this raises serious challenges in organisations whose translation departments are understaffed or have no specialised skills. Consequently, all the issues raised above deserve serious attention if the AU wants to preserve unity among Member States.

Secondly, from a linguistic and professional perspective, it is quite challenging for translators and/or interpreters, especially those at the PAP, to handle both translation and interpretation at the same time, particularly if they have to translate or interpret from their mother tongues into other official languages of the AU. It came to light from the findings at the PAP that, for example, a translator whose mother tongue is Portuguese finds it more convenient translating and interpreting from English and/or French into Portuguese; however, s/he can only translate from Portuguese into English, but not into French. In the end, some translators and/or interpreters may not be able to discharge their duties professionally. This is because it is more convenient for most translators and/or interpreters to translate or interpret into their mother tongues than the other way around. As Roland remarks: “ ... often they find themselves forced to work in others and no one can possibly know intimately the customs of so many different nations” (1992: 138). For his part, Hatim observes that: “[i]t is generally assumed that working into one’s mother tongue (the ‘A’ language) is the ‘natural order’ ” (2001: 164). Hatim further argues that “such

assumptions build on claims in bilingual education that linguistic competence is rarely symmetrical (i.e. that functioning in one's native language is bound to be superior to performing in the second language" (2001: 164). Further, Newmark, quoted by Hatim, observes that "translating into the language of habitual use is the only way you can translate naturally and accurately and with maximum effectiveness" (2001: 164).

This observation, according to Hatim, is consistent with the common assumption that "translation into the mother tongue is the 'normal' direction—a stance promoted by international translation associations and enshrined in UNESCO's recommendations" (2001: 164-165). This notwithstanding, Hatim points out that contrary to this assumption, some schools of thought (teachers and employees) hold the view that "a translator should have no difficulty translating competently in both directions, i.e. into and out of the foreign language" (Hatim, 2001: 164).

Thirdly, the AU was set up to serve the best interests of all Africans irrespective of their gender, religion or ethnicity. Therefore, it has set quite ambitious short-term as well as long-term objectives which need to be fulfilled. Put differently, the ultimate goal of the AU is to serve as "[a] common platform for African peoples and their grass-root organizations to be more involved in discussions and decision-making on problems facing the continent" (PAP website: www.pan-african-parliament.org). In this respect, the fulfilment of these objectives as well as the implementation of policies by the AU need to be translated, interpreted and disseminated to the peoples of 54 different countries across the continent.

Translating and interpreting such objectives and how policies are being implemented will systematically require translators and interpreters to take into account the linguistic, social and cultural contexts or realities of at least 54 different countries. Therefore, good translation and interpreting of such objectives and policies will only be assessed through the way the peoples of Africa are made to perceive and appreciate them. This will therefore require good translation and interpreting. As Sprung remarks: "[e]ffective translation bridges the gap between cultures, not merely words" (2000: xiv). Similarly, Wolf, referring to a "Communication from the Commission to the European Parliament" entitled "*Multilingualism: an asset for Europe and a shared commitment*" (Europe 2008), remarks, among other things, that: "[l]anguages define

identities, but are also part of a shared inheritance. They can serve as a bridge to other people and open access to other countries and cultures, promoting mutual understanding” (2009).

This notwithstanding, official or working languages are used in an imbalanced manner in most international organisations, particularly at the AU. Also, Casanova remarks that: “[p]olitical science has demonstrated the political and social inequality of languages” (2010: 288). English and French seem to be the two dominant languages among the working languages of the AU. Consequently, documents, meetings and other public information are often made available in these two languages. Compared with French, English seems to dominate. The hegemony of the world’s *lingua franca* is exemplified by the fact that the seat of the PAP is located in South Africa, an English speaking country. Further, South Africa’s Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, a speaker of English, one of the working languages of the AU, made history by being elected the first woman Chairperson of the AUC, on July 15 2012, by the 19th Summit of African Heads of State and Government in Addis-Ababa (Ethiopia). She replaced Dr Jean Ping in one of the most closely contested races in the history of the AU.

Heilbron observes that since the international system is so firmly dominated by one hyper-central language, that is, English, one might presume that translations from other languages will decrease leading to a virtual monopoly for translations from English (Heilbron, 2010: 313).

With respect to Kiswahili, an African language, the majority of translators and/or interpreters interviewed during this study agreed that the AU needs to be commended for making Kiswahili one of its official languages. Some AU translators/interpreters working for the UN indicated that plans were being made to include Kiswahili in the official languages of the UN. They were, however, of the view that, for this to materialise, the AU must promote Kiswahili further so that it can receive the much-needed international recognition it deserves. However, it must be emphasised that being the only African language of the AU, Kiswahili should be featuring prominently in all meetings of the AU.

5.2.9. Translation: internal processes and procedures at the AUC and the PAP

As Joscelyne (2000: 89) remarks, a translation department of any international organisation should be in the position to manage any type of document. At the PAP, translation requests are made through the Translation Department. It receives and acknowledges receipt of documents to be translated and identifies a suitable translator. Consequently, the translator does the translation; s/he does the typing and produces the work independently. Put simply, the translation and the post editing (proof-reading and revision) are done by translators themselves as currently translators and/or interpreters at the PAP have neither secretaries, nor revisers and proofreaders compared to their colleagues at the AUC. Finally, the translated document is sent back to the requesting unit through the Translation Department. The translation process is the same at the AUC. Documents to be translated are transmitted to the Head of Translation who identifies and assigns translations accordingly. It must be emphasised that unlike the PAP, the Translation Department of the AUC has secretaries, revisers and proofreaders who edit translated documents before they are returned to the requesting departments or units (see Table 16).

5.2.10. Tools and equipment at the disposal of translators at the AUC and the PAP

Each of the four translators and/or interpreters at the PAP has the basic tools for the performance of their duties: a well-furnished office, a computer with internet connection, a printer and stationery, reference works/sources e.g. dictionaries, previous translations, access to libraries and software programmes: Trados, Wordfast, etc. At the AUC, the 24 translators also have the same tools at their disposal.

5.3. *Translators at the AUC and the PAP*

As mentioned earlier, the PAP currently employs four translators who double up as interpreters with the following language combinations:

- Two (2) translators translate and interpret from French and English into Portuguese, which is their mother tongue. However, the two translators can only translate or interpret

from English into Portuguese, and not from French into Portuguese. From this perspective, it appears that the PAP is challenged in terms of skills.

- One (1) translator translates and interprets French and English into and out of Arabic.
- One (1) translator translates and interprets English into and out of French (target language).

The tables below provide information about the current situation of translators and/or interpreters at the PAP and the AUC.

Translators/Interpreters	No.	Mother tongue	Language combination
Arabic	1	Arabic	English, French into Arabic and vice-versa
French	1	French	English into French only (not the other way around)
English into French	-	-	-
Portuguese	2	Portuguese	English, French into Portuguese (only English into Portuguese, not French into Portuguese) ¹²
Kiswahili	-		
Spanish	-		
Support staff			
Proofreaders	-		
Revisers	-		
Secretaries	-		
Total	4		

Table 15: Translators and/or Interpreters at the PAP

¹² French is no longer offered as a second or third language in Portuguese-speaking countries at both secondary and tertiary levels. It has been replaced by English. Therefore, these skills (translating/interpreting from French into Portuguese) are now scarce, according to the Portuguese translators/interpreters interviewed.

Members of staff	Regular	Short term	Mother tongue	Language combination
Translators	12	12	Arabic, English, French, Kiswahili, Portuguese, Spanish.	Arabic, English, French, Kiswahili, Portuguese, Spanish.
Interpreters	10	10	Arabic, English, French, Kiswahili, Portuguese, Spanish.	Arabic, English, French, Kiswahili, Portuguese, Spanish.
Revisers	4	7		
Proofreaders	5	4		
Secretaries	13	2		
Coordinators	6	5		
Interpretation Equipment Technicians	3	1		
Total	53	41		

Table 16: Staff of DCMP

As already mentioned, unlike translators at the AUC who have secretaries, proofreaders and revisers, translators at the PAP have to perform these functions themselves. This situation definitely has an impact on the quality of work produced by translators.

From the comment above, it is apparent that the work of translators and/or interpreters is rather challenging at the PAP in comparison to the AUC in Addis Ababa, because translators have to double up as interpreters, even if it may not be convenient for them to translate or interpret from their mother tongues into other target languages they may not have an excellent command of. It must be pointed out, however, that in an effort to conform to international practice, which requires that there be separate departments of translation and interpretation, during sessions of the PAP, until the recent appointment of a Head of Translation and Interpreting, the Head of

Documentation of the PAP was the *de facto* coordinator of all translation-related activities, while one of the senior Portuguese translators acted as the coordinator of all interpretation-related activities.

5.3.1. Profile and status of translators at the AUC and the PAP

Translators at the PAP are all general linguists with a minimum qualification of a Bachelor of Arts degree. They have a wealth of experience with many years in their jobs. This is in line with the recruitment policies of the AU, which require that “applicants must have at least a Bachelor’s Degree in Languages, and a professional qualification from a recognised school of Translation and Interpreting” (see Appendix E: Job Advertisement Interpreter/Translator-Arabic-PAP/ADV/02/2012). Indeed, some of them have been in the job for over 10 years. As concerns their status, like their colleagues at the AUC in Addis Ababa, translators at the PAP are treated like international civil servants by their employers.

5.3.2. Theory vs. practice

In line with the policies of the AU, applicants must possess “at least 8 years of progressively relevant working experience in translation and interpreting in an institution or international meetings on diverse issues” (see Appendices C, D & E: Job Advertisements: Ref CSD 01/2011, Ref CSD 02/2011, Ref: PAP/ADV/02/2012).

The heated debate, whether translators/interpreters should be trained in formal academic institutions, or on-the-job, has generated substantial interest over the years. Similarly, Hatim remarks that “this has been exacerbated by the polarisation of theory and practice cast in terms of two quite distinct and incompatible ‘universes’” (2001: 7). Further, Hatim raises the following pertinent issue “... of whether what is taught in a translation-training programmes is translation proper or simply translation-related language skills” (2001: 168).

For her part, Baker observes that some professional translators, particularly those who have been trained on-the job are “strongly against formal academic training” (1992: 3). This is because, for

such translators: “[t]he ability to translate is a gift they say: you either have it or you do not, and theory (almost a dirty word in some translation circles) is therefore irrelevant to the work of a translator” (1992: 3). Consequently, Baker observes that if translators hold this kind of argument, they may be regarded as “witch doctors and faith healers” (1992: 4). Consequently, Baker concludes: “the fact remains that witch doctory and faith healing are not recognised professions, and that medicine is” (1992: 4).

Also, Downing and Tillery argue that: “[a]n untrained bilingual, when asked to ‘interpret,’ has no way of knowing what she is or is not expected to do. A clear evidence of professionalism is to know one’s personal and professional limits” (1992: 51). The two scholars conclude that in well-established professions, professionals are trained to understand and appreciate what is expected of them as well as the boundary they cannot cross in the discharge of their duties.

Approximately 90 % of respondents indicated that the number of years spent in the job is more important than a formal academic training. As a result, the researcher presumed that the more experience translators and interpreters have, the higher their chances of being hired. Any different outcome from what the researcher presumed would lead to a different conclusion (See Appendices C, D & E: Job Advertisements: Ref CSD 01/2011, Ref CSD 02/2011, Ref: PAP/ADV/02/2012).

Further, it must be emphasised that in almost all international organisations, the number of years is one of the key requirements. This is in line with Joscelyne’s statement about the Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) to the effect that: “[t]he typical profile of a new recruit is a professional translator with several years’ experience either in other organizations or in the private sector” (2000: 87-88). Consequently, applicants without the relevant working experience (fresh graduates from universities) do not qualify (2000: 87).

Pan (1997), cited in Hatim (2001), believes that:

[t]ranslators can be trained. It is pure speculation to say that a good translator is born and that a good translation cannot be accomplished under pressure. In this age of discipline, translations are performed under time and quality controls.

Translators can no longer indulge in reverie and infinite finishing touches. (2001: 162)

Hatim also writes that: “[o]ne important manifestation of the success of translation studies is the flourishing of translator and interpreter training as an academic pursuit in its own right” (2001: 9). Hatim further observes that: “[m]ore and more graduate programmes are being set up around the world, international conferences on training issues are organised regularly, and now almost every country has its own professional association(s)” (2001: 9). In the end, Hatim suggests the following practical solution: “[o]ne way of dealing with this problem has been to suggest that translation should only be taught in specialised schools and that the highest levels of linguistic competence must be assumed” (2001: 168). The problem being referred to by Hatim is about whether translators should be academically-trained or not. According to Joscelyne, records at the Organization of Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) indicate that experienced translators who attended a translation school have a better chance of being recruited than their colleagues who only have a background in modern languages (2000: 88).

5.3.3. Strategies/Approaches to translation

Translators and/or interpreters interviewed during this study believe that experience in the job is key. Therefore, the issue of approaches or strategies or translation theory-based approaches may not be very relevant in this context. This is because, for the translators and/or interpreters, the words and expressions they come across on a daily basis are almost the same, with the only difference that these words and expressions sometimes occur in different situations or contexts. Therefore, the number of years of experience influences the choices the translator makes with regard to a particular text or document. Further, the AU has crafted its own terminology (as well as specific policies and guidelines); to some extent, this makes the work of the translator less difficult and challenging. It is interesting to point out that this issue of experience (the number of years in the job) was highlighted specifically by translators and/or interpreters interviewed. For the majority of them, it does not matter if one has a Masters or a PhD in translation; the most important thing for the translators is the number of years a translator and/or interpreter has on her/his CV.

This notwithstanding, translators at the AUC and the PAP apply, in one way or another, the following important translation sub-strategies suggested by Gambier (2009):

- *Comprehension strategies before translating*: organisational strategies, reading strategies, text-analysis strategies, search strategies for terminological mining and information retrieval, the consultation of authorities in the field, etc;
- *Production strategies in the translation process*: writing up a draft, solving local problems, finalising the translated text, revision strategies and survival strategies¹³;
- *After translating*: this deals specifically with the way the final translated document is presented and distributed; and how it is delivered to the client (the one who has requested for the translation).

From the perspective of the importance of experience in the job discussed above, it may be fair to ask the following questions: Does the number of years make a good translator? How many years of experience should a translator have before s/he is considered a good translator? Does routine (doing the same thing over many years) constitute the basis upon which a translator can be judged as competent or not? From the discussion above, it can be argued that routine, which consists of doing the same work over and over again, makes that work less difficult and challenging, or may even lead to mediocrity. As concerns this, some “experienced” translators and/or interpreters of the AU believe that they can translate documents of between 30 and 35 pages without actually referring to a dictionary or a terminology database.

5.3.1. Do translators keep closer to the ST or produce a more fluent translation?

From the assessment of the four texts and the findings in both institutions, it appears that translators and/or interpreters do not do a word-for-word translation. They produce more fluent translations while keeping the ST in mind. This is because for an international organisation such as the AU, made up of 54 Member States and which works in no less than six different languages, it follows logically that translators and/or interpreters are expected to produce

¹³ This information came to light through the interaction with the respondents.

translations which take into account the various cultural and linguistic expectations of Member States. As House remarks: “[i]n translating, then, a text in one language is replaced by a functionally equivalent text in another language” (2009: 12). A pertinent question arising from this perspective therefore is: How can translators achieve ‘functional equivalence’?

According to House:

[f]unctional equivalence can be established by referring original and translation to the *context of situation* which envelops the original and the translation in necessarily different ways, just as the two language systems involved in translation (and the minds of authors and translator and reader (s) for that matter) are necessarily different. (2009: 12)

House further argues that if one considers a text typology as a way of “trying to gain insight into, and account for, different types of translations, equivalence relationships are not fruitful” (2009: 13). This is because, according to House, a translation is dependent on how the ST is written as well as the information it conveys; however, the translation process remains constant.

5.3.2. How is information contained in translated documents disseminated in Member States?

This question was not part of the main objective of the research. It was however included in the questionnaires (see Appendices A & B: Questionnaire/Interview–Translators) as it helped sample views of translators and/or interpreters on the issue of how information is disseminated in Member States. This would therefore be an interesting area of future research. From the findings, some translators and/or interpreters know very little or nothing at all about how information contained in documents they translate is disseminated in Member States. Again, others indicated that those at the helm of affairs at the AU were the appropriate people to answer this question given the fact that it is the AU which is the ultimate decision-making and implementation body. However, a few of the respondents indicated that the knowledge they produce is shared during meetings at an individual country level. Others said that the AU is in the process of working closely with regional organisations and national assemblies and parliaments so that MPs as well

as officials of such institutions are invited to meetings of the AUC and PAP. With respect to the issues mentioned above, a few questions may be raised: Does a communication gap exist between the AUC or the PAP and its knowledge producers (translators and/or interpreters)? How does the internal communication machinery of the two organs (the AUC and the PAP) in particular, and that of the AU in general, function?

6. CHAPTER SIX: CONCLUSION AND RECOMMENDATIONS

6.1. Conclusion

This research explored the practice of translation in the AU with the intention of providing practical insight into the profession in two of the organs of the continental body, notably the AUC and the PAP. The research was divided into six main chapters.

Chapter One, at the outset, stressed the strategic role of translation in the two institutions mentioned above and also explored views of translation scholars on the importance of translation in other international organisations. Translation is at the very heart of the operations of the two institutions. As such, it helps enhance intercultural communication among the 54 Member States. Therefore, documents produced by various departments, units and divisions of the two institutions, the two annual ordinary and extraordinary sessions of the PAP, the annual ordinary and extraordinary sessions of the Assembly of the African Union (Conferences of Heads of State and Government) as well as other meetings are translated by translators and/or interpreters of the AUC and the PAP.

Therefore, focusing on the Translation Departments, this study provided a practical insight into the practice of translation at the AUC and the PAP. To this end, the introductory chapter set four main objectives: (1) to establish how translations are produced in both the AUC and the PAP, (2) to identify the profiles of translators working for the two organs, (3) to evaluate the quality of some translations produced at both the AUC and the PAP, (4) and finally, to establish if translations in both institutions are source or target-oriented. The rationale of the research centred on the importance of the six official languages of the AU (of which the AUC and the PAP are organs). Furthermore, the rationale explained the reasons behind the choice of the study of the practice of translation in the two organs of the AU and the five components of multilingualism from the perspective of Alexander (2011).

Chapter Two was divided into two main parts: Literature Review and Theoretical Framework. The first part explored, first and foremost, a number of theoretical ideas, thoughts and

experiences regarding the importance of translation in international institutions as well as translation quality assessment, and translation strategies employed by translators in the translation process. As the assessment of four STs and their translations was one of the objectives of this research, the Literature Review focused on House's functional approach to equivalence and meaning, particularly at the level of a text. Consequently, key features of House's (1997) translation quality assessment model were discussed. These key features were incorporated into the new model used in the assessment of the four source texts and target texts from these two institutions. This new model was adapted slightly from the revised model of translation quality assessment proposed by House (1997).

Therefore, the main part of the Literature Review dealt with three main types of meaning: semantic, pragmatic and textual, five main types of equivalence: (a) denotative, (b) connotative, (c) text normative, (d) pragmatic and (e) formal-aesthetic, as well as the two main functions of a text: ideational (which mainly provides an objective and informative message) and interpersonal (which does not only inform but aims at arousing emotions on the part of the recipient of a message). Consequently, the two main translation strategies *covert* (in which the translator tries to maintain the function of the ST as equivalent as possible in the TT) and *overt* translation (in which the translator tries to show the 'intimate' relationship between the original text and the source audience and its culture) were discussed. Other translation strategies such as those suggested by Gambier (2009 (b)) were also explored.

The theoretical framework which forms the last segment of Chapter Two provided a theoretical and methodological foundation for the research. To this end, the first part discussed the notion of *textual profile* in relation to text analysis along eight main dimensions: "*Dimensions of Language User*" and "*Dimensions of Language Use*".

The second part focused on the linguistic features of a text: *field, tenor, mode, register, genre and language*. The final part discussed the theoretical views of a number of scholars in relation to the study.

Chapter Three set out the methodological approach used in the study. Since this research is empirical in nature, that is, a case study of the practice of translation at the AUC and the PAP, the methodology addressed both quantitative and qualitative methods used in collecting data for the study as well as the model adapted from House's (1997) translation quality assessment model for the assessment of four STs and their translations from the two institutions. Furthermore, a clear distinction was made between quantitative and qualitative research methods. Consequently, a purposive sampling method was used in gathering data. This was done to ensure that all the translators and/or interpreters and a supervisor were included in the research. Their inputs were necessary in order to fulfil the specific objectives of the study. The study used statistical analysis as well as qualitative gathering through face-to-face interviews with translators and/or interpreters and one supervisor. 30 respondents (regular and freelance translators and/or interpreters) of both the AUC and the PAP including a supervisor of the PAP were included in this research. Put simply, questionnaires consisting of both closed-ended and open-ended questions were submitted to 15 translators and/or interpreters for them to complete. Further, face-to-face interviews were conducted with 15 other translators and/or interpreters of the AUC and the PAP including a supervisor of the PAP. The aim was to seek their views, perspectives and personal experiences regarding the practice of translation in the two institutions.

Chapter Four critically evaluated four original texts and their translations (two per organ) using a new model adapted slightly from House's (1997) model of translation quality assessment. The source texts from the PAP are compiled in English: (1) *Protocol to the Treaty establishing the African Economic Community Relating the Pan-African Parliament*, and (2) *Oath/Solemn Declaration of Allegiance (Rule No 9) The Member of the Pan-African Parliament*. The other two source texts from the AUC are drafted in French : (3) *Projet d'Allocution du Président de la Commission, Dr Jean Ping, à la Séance d'ouverture de la 19ème Session Ordinaire de l'Assemblée de l'Union*, and (4) *Lettre du Président*. With the exception of the Solemn Declaration of Oath of Allegiance, the evaluated texts fulfilled ideational functions aimed at informing the readership. Consequently, a *covert translation* strategy was used by translators and a *cultural filter* (the possible means through which a translator makes shifts and changes in the translation process taking into account different pragmatic parameters) applied in achieving a functional equivalent. Based on the assessment of the four texts mentioned earlier, it is fair to say

that translators in the two institutions do not use a word-for-word translation approach but keep fairly close to the ST, while ensuring that they produce more fluent translations according to the specific terminology and guidelines of the AU.

Chapter Five provided a practical insight into the practice of translation at the AUC and the PAP. Divided into two main parts, the first part analysed some of the data while the second part commented on and discussed findings in both institutions. In analysing the data collected, the demographic and background information of translators and/or interpreters at the AUC and the PAP was investigated. Some of the variables included in the questionnaires covered, for example, the number of years they have practised as translators and/or interpreters, the number of years they have worked for the PAP or the AUC, their qualifications, that is, if they are academically- trained translators or not, and other relevant information needed for these analyses. Moreover, a number of questions were asked about the types of strategies translators use, especially when translating difficult or technical documents.

The findings revealed that translation plays a strategic role in the smooth running of the AUC and the PAP. Interestingly, even though investigating how information contained in documents translated in the two institutions is disseminated among Member States was not the main focus of the research, the question was explored. As a result, some translators and/or interpreters interviewed during the study indicated that they knew very little or nothing at all about how the information contained in the translations they produced themselves is distributed in Member States. This could be an interesting topic of further research into the practice of translation in the AU for the purpose of determining how well this information circulate among Member States.

6.2. *Recommendations*

In the light of the discussion above, the following recommendations, if taken into consideration, will help enhance further the profession in the two institutions studied:

Recruitment:

- The recruitment of more professional translators and/or interpreters by the AU will be a step in the right direction in addressing the current work load of translators, particularly at the PAP which has only four translators and/or interpreters in comparison to 24 translators (12 regular and 12 on a short-term contract) at the AUC. This will further enhance the work of translators in the two institutions.
- The translation professional appointed recently to head the Translation and Interpreting Department should be given the opportunity to operate with significant autonomy in order to boost the image of the profession at the PAP. Additionally, support staff (secretaries, revisers and proofreaders) should be recruited.
- Furthermore, the PAP, like the AUC, should establish a separate Department of Interpretation in a bid to allow translators and/or interpreters to be where they actually feel more competent. This will help avoid the situation where for financial constraints, translators working at the PAP have to double up as interpreters.
- Since translation plays a strategic role in the smooth running of the AU, particularly the AUC and the PAP, translators and/or interpreters working for the two institutions should be given the opportunity to specialise in subject fields of their choice. Alternatively, both institutions may have to recruit translators in subject fields such as finance, law, engineering, medicine, climate change, etc. Admittedly, this will require a substantial financial commitment on the part of the AU.
- In the light of the fact that some translators and/or interpreters admitted that they did not know much or anything at all about how information contained in the documents they translate is disseminated in Member States as a result of poor communication between the AU and Member States, it will therefore be necessary for the AUC and the PAP, in particular, and the AU in general, to ensure that on an individual country level, the citizenry is informed. For example, each Member State may organise what may be

termed “AU Awareness Month” with the view to informing and educating the populace about AU programmes and policies and their implementation processes. This objective will be attained through the use of the electronic (radio, television, cinema, and the new social media, etc.) and print media (newspapers, periodicals, journals, magazines, etc.). At the grass-roots level, information, documents as well as documentaries should either be translated or subtitled into indigenous languages. At the end of the day, the populace must be given the opportunity to appreciate how the AU is serving best their interests.

It may therefore be fair to say that with appropriate resources, both human and financial, the profession of translation may be further enhanced for the benefit of the two organs studied, and for the AU as a whole.

7. REFERENCES

- Alexander, N. 2011. "The value of multilingualism for higher education in post-apartheid South Africa". A paper presented at a symposium held under the theme: "Language & Cultural Capital" at the University of the Witwatersrand (9-10 November 2011).
- Alexander, P. 1972. *An Introduction to Languages and Language in Africa*. London: Heinemann.
- Angelelli, C. V. and Jacobson, H.E. (Eds) 2009. *Testing and assessment in translation and interpreting studies: A call for dialogue between research and practice*. Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins: 1-8.
- Anobile, M. 2000. "Foreword". In Sprung, C. R. and Jaroniec S. (Eds) *Translation Into Success: Cutting-edge strategies for going multilingual in a global age*. Amsterdam/ Philadelphia: John Benjamins: vii.
- Baker, M. 1992. *In Other Words: A Coursebook on Translation*. London: Routledge.
- Baker, M. (Ed.) 1998. *Routledge Encyclopedia of Translation Studies*. London & New York: Routledge.
- Bastin, G. L. 2000. "Evaluating Beginners' Re-expression and Creativity: A Positive Approach" *The Translator*, Vol. 6 (2): 231-245.
- Bowker, L. 2000. "A Corpus-Based Approach to Evaluating Student Translation." *The Translator*, Vol. 6(2): 183-209.
- Bührig, K., House, J. and ten Thije, J. D. (Eds) 2009. *Translational Action and Intercultural Communication*. Manchester: St Jerome.
- Casanova, P. 2010. Consecration and Accumulation of Literary Capital: Translation as Unequal Exchange. In Baker M. (Ed.) *Critical Readings in Translation Studies*. London and New York: Routledge: 285-303.
- Chesterman, A. 1997. *Memes of Translation*. Amsterdam & Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Corazza, E. 2004. *Reflecting the Mind: Indexicality and Quasi-indexicality*. New York: Oxford Clarendon Press.
- Creswell, J. W. 2009. *Research Design: Qualitative, Quantitative, and Mixed Methods Approaches* (3rd edition). Thousand Oaks, California: Sage Publications, Inc.
- Delisle, J. 1998. *Translation: An Interpretive Approach*. Ottawa: University of Ottawa Press.

- Djité, P. 2008. *The Sociolinguistics of Development in Africa*. Clevedon, Buffalo and Toronto: Multilingual Matters Ltd.
- Downing B. T. and Tillery, K. H. 1992. "Professional Training for Community Interpreters". A Publication of the Center for Urban and Regional Affairs-CURA, 330 Humphrey Center, 301 19th Avenue S., Minneapolis, MN 55455.
- Edmondson, W. J. 1981. *Spoken Discourse: A model for Analysis*. London; New York: Longman.
- Fenderico, G. 1984. "An Analysis of a scientific text according to Juliane House's Model of Translation Assessment". Unpublished Research Report. Johannesburg: University of the Witwatersrand.
- Gambier, Y. 2009 (a). "Stratégies et tactiques en traduction et interpretation". In Hansen, G. , Gerzymisch-Arbogast, H., and Chesterman, A. (Eds) *Effort and Models in Interpreting and Translation Research: A tribute to Daniel Gile*. Amsterdam & Philadelphia: John Benjamins. Translation Studies Bibliography (TSB): 63-82.
- Gambier, Y. 2009 (b). "Stratégies et tactiques en traduction et interpretation-[Strategies and Tactics in translation and interpreting]." <http://www.benjamins.com/online/hts/> [Accessed 20 March 2012].
- Gutt, E. A. 1991. *Translation and Relevance: Cognition and Context*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Hatim, B. 2001. *Teaching and Researching Translation*. Harlow Pearson Education Limited.
- Heilbron, J. 2010. "Towards a Sociology of Translation: Book Translations As a Cultural World System". In Baker, M. (Ed.) *Critical Readings in Translation Studies*. London and New York: Routledge: 304-316.
- Hesse-Bibber, S. N. and Leavy, P. 2011. *The Practice of Qualitative Research* (2nd edition). Los Angeles: Sage Publications Inc.
- Holmes, J. S. 1972. "The Name and Nature of Translation Studies". In Venuti, (Ed.) 2000. *The Translation Studies Reader*. London: Routledge.
- House, J. 1977 (2nd ed.1981). *A Model for Translation Quality Assessment*. Tübingen: Gunter Narr.
- House, J. 1981. *A Model for Translation Quality Assessment* (2nd edition). Tübingen: Narr.

- House, J. and Blum-Kulka, S. (Eds) 1986. *Interlingual and Intercultural Communication. Discourse and Cognition in Translation and Second Language Acquisition Studies*. Tübingen: Gunter Narr.
- House, J. 1997. *Translation Quality Assessment: A Model Revisited*. Tübingen: Gunter Narr.
- House, J. 1998. "Quality of Translation". In Baker, M. (Ed.) *Routledge Encyclopedia of Translation Studies*, London & New York: Routledge.
- House, J. 2009. "Moving across Languages and Cultures in Translation as Intercultural Communication". In Bührig, K., House, J., and Ten Thije, J.D. (Eds) *Translational Action and Intercultural Communication*. Manchester: St Jerome.
- Joscelyne, A. 2000. "The Role of Translation in an International Organization". In Sprung, C.R., and Jaroniec, S. (Eds) *Translation Into Success: Cutting-edge strategies for going multilingual in a global age*. Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins: 81-95.
- Kelly, D. 2005. *A Handbook For Translator Trainers*. Manchester: St. Jerome.
- Kim, M. 2009. "Meaning-oriented Assessment of Translations". In Angelelli, C. V. and Jacobson, H. E. (Eds) *Testing and Assessment in Translation and Interpreting Studies*. Amsterdam/Philadelphia: John Benjamins: 123-157
- Koo, S.L. and Kinds, H. 2000. "A Quality-Assurance Model for Language Projects". In Sprung, C. R. and Jaroniec S. (Eds) *Translation Into Success: Cutting-edge strategies for going multilingual in a global age*. Amsterdam/ Philadelphia: John Benjamins: 147-157.
- Lauscher, S. 2000. "Translation Quality Assessment: Where Can Theory and Practice Meet?" In Maier, C. (Ed.) *The Translator: Studies in Intercultural Communication*. Vol. 6 (2): 149-168.
- Leedy, P.D. and Ormrod, J.E. 2013. *Practical Research Planning and Design*. (10th edition). Boston, MA: Pearson Education Inc.
- Leppihalme, R. 1997. *Culture Bumps: An empirical Approach to the Translation of Allusions* (Topics in Translation 10). Clevedon: Multilingual Matters.
- Leppihalme, R. 2000. "The Two Faces of Standardization: On the Translation of Regionalism in Literary Dialogue". *The Translator: Studies in Intercultural Communication*. Vol. 6 (2): 247-269.
- Lieber, E. and Weisner, T. S. 2010. "Meeting the Practical Challenges of Mixed Methods Research". In Tashakkori, A. and Teddlie, C. (Eds) *Sage Handbook of Mixed Methods in*

- Social and Behavioral Research* (2nd edition). Thousand Oaks, Calif. Sage Publications Inc.
- Lyons, J. 1968. *Introduction to Theoretical Linguistics*. Cambridge: Cambridge University.
- Maier, C. (Ed.) 2000. "Evaluation and Translation". *The Translator: Studies in Intercultural Communication*. Vol. 6 (2): 137-148.
- Miles, M. and Huberman, A. 1984. *Qualitative Data Analysis*. London: Sage.
- Newmark, P. 1982. *Approaches to Translation*. Oxford: Pergamon.
- Nida, E. 1964. *Toward a Science of Translation*. Leiden: Brill.
- Nord, C. 1991. *Text Analysis in Translation: Theory, Methodology, and Didactic Application of a Model for Translation-Oriented Text Analysis*. Amsterdam-Atlanta, GA: Rodopi.
- Oliver, P. 2010. *The Student's Guide to Research Ethics* (2nd edition). Berkshire: Open University Press McGraw-Hill Education. England SL6 2 QL.
- Pym, A. 1992. "Translation Error Analysis and the Interface with Language Teaching." In Dollerup, C. and Loddegaard, A. (Eds) *Teaching Translation and Interpreting: Training, Talent and Experience*. Amsterdam and Philadelphia: John Benjamins: 279-88.
- Renfen, C. 1992. "Translator and Interpreter Training: A Case for a Two-tier System". In Dollerup, C. and Loddegaard, A. (Eds) *Teaching Translation and Interpreting: Training, Talent, and Experience*. Amsterdam and Philadelphia: John Benjamins: 173-184.
- Robinson, D. 1991. *The Translator's Turn*. Baltimore and London: The Johns Hopkins University Press.
- Robinson, D. 2002. *Western Translation Theory from Herodotus to Nietzsche*. Manchester: St Jerome.
- Roland, R. A. 1992. *Interpreters as Diplomats: A Diplomatic History of the Role of Interpreters in World Politics*. Ottawa: University of Ottawa Press.
- Sager, J. C. 1989. "Quality and Standards- the Evaluation of Translation". In Picken, C. (Ed.) *The Translator's Handbook* (2nd edition): 91- 102.
- Shipman, M. 1988. *The Limitations of Social Research*. London and New York: Longman.
- Silverman, D. 2000. *Doing Qualitative Research: A Practical Handbook*. London: Sage Publications.
- Sperber, D. and Wilson D. 1986. *Relevance: Communication and Cognition*. Oxford: Blackwell, Cambridge, Mass: Harvard UP.

- Spolsky, B. 2009. *Language Management*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Sprung, R. C. 2000. "Introduction". In Sprung, C. R. and Jaroniec S. (Eds) *Translation Into Success: Cutting-edge strategies for going multilingual in a global age*. Amsterdam/ Philadelphia: John Benjamins: ix-xxii.
- Sprung, R. C. and Jaroniec, S. (Eds) 2000. *Translation Into Success: Cutting-edge strategies for going multilingual in a global age*. Amsterdam/ Philadelphia: John Benjamins.
- Stacey, M. 1969. *Methods of Social Research*. Pergamon Press.
- Stalnaker, R. C. 1973. "Pragmatics". In Davidson, D. and Harman, G. (Eds) *Semantics of Natural Languages*. Dordrecht-Holland: D. Reidel Publishing Company: 380-397.
- Tashakkori, A. and Teddlie, C. (Eds) 2010. *Handbook of Mixed Methods in Social and Behavioral Research*. Thousand Oaks, Calif. Sage Publications Inc.
- Toury, G. 1995. *Descriptive Translation Studies and Beyond*. Amsterdam and Philadelphia, PA: John Benjamins.
- Wolf, M. 2009. The implications of a sociological turn-methodological and disciplinary questions. Available at: http://isg.urv.es/publicity/isg/publications/trp_2_2009/chapters/wolf.pdf. [Accessed 27 January 2011].
- Zequan, L. 2003. "Register Analysis as a Tool for Translation Quality Assessment". *Translation Journal* Vol. 7 (3): 1-26. Available at: <http://accurapid.com/journal/25register.htm> [Accessed 03 June 2012].

7.1. Organisations and websites

African Academy of Languages. www.acalan.org [Accessed 10 October 2012].

African Union (AU): www.africa-union.org/www.au.int/en/organs/pap [Accessed 05 October 2012].

American Translators Association (ATA): www.atanet.org [Accessed 08 June 2012].

Localisation Industry Standards Association (LISA): www.lisa.org [Accessed 20 June 2012].

MT News International. www.lim.nl/eamt/mtni [Accessed 10 October 2012].

Pan-African Parliament (PAP): www.pan-african-parliament.org [Accessed 09 May 2012].

Society for Technical Communication (STC): www.stc.org [Accessed 10 October 2012].

The Unicode Consortium. www.unicode.org [Accessed 15 November 2012].

United States Department of Labor: Bureau of Labor Statistics website:

<http://www.bls.gov/ooh/Media-and-Communication/Interpreters-and-translators.htm> [Accessed 07 September 2012].

7.2. Language-Industry Publications

Language International. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.

www.language-international.com

Multilingual Computing & Technology. Sandpoint, Idaho:

Multilingual Computing. www.multilingual.com

Technical Communication, Journal of the Society for Technical Communication.

www.stc.org

7.3. Websites

John Benjamins Publishing Company website:

<http://www.benjamins.com/online/hts/> [Accessed 2 March 2012].

Forum: Qualitative Social Research

<http://www.qualitative-research.net/fqs/fqs-eng.htm> [Accessed 10 April 2012].

Association for Qualitative Research

<http://www.latrobe.edu.au/aqr/> [Accessed 13 October 2012].

Qualitative Research Consultants Association

<http://www.qrca.org/> [Accessed 10 November 2012].

The Association for Qualitative Research

<http://www.aqrp.co.uk/> [Accessed 28 October 2012].

The Quality Research Report

<http://www.nova.edu/ssss/QR/qualres.html> [Accessed 05 December 2012].

<http://www.nova.edu/ssss/QR/web.html> [Accessed 01 November 2012].

Social Research Online

<http://www.socresonline.org.uk/2/3/3.html> [Accessed 19 October 2012].

8. APPENDICES

Appendix A: Questionnaire/Interview (Translators)

UNIVERSITY OF THE WITWATERSRAND, JOHANNESBURG



Dear Sir/Madam,

I am a Masters student of the University of Witwatersrand, Johannesburg; I am conducting a research into the practice of translation at the Pan-African Parliament (South Africa) and the African Union Commission (Ethiopia). I would like to appeal to you: I ask for a few minutes of your time to answer the questionnaire. Results from this study will be for academic purposes only, and your personal information will remain confidential. I am very grateful for your time and support.

QUESTIONNAIRE/INTERVIEW (TRANSLATORS)

I have read and understood the questionnaire and information sheet provided Yes () No ()

1. How long have you been practicing as a translator? Please tick: 1-5 yrs () 5-10 yrs ()
10 yrs plus ().

2) How many years have you been with the Pan African Parliament? Please tick: 1-5 yrs ()
5- 10 yrs () 10 yrs plus ().

3) What is your level of qualification? Please tick: Honours () Masters () Ph D ()
Please specify others.....

4) Which working languages are used by the Translation Department?

Please tick: Arabic () English () French () Portuguese () Spanish ()
Kiswahili () All of the above ().

5) Does the Department have translators in all the above-stated languages?

Yes () No ().

6) How many in-house translators work in the Translation Department? Please tick:

10 () 15 () 20 ().

Please indicate otherwise.....

7 a) How many in-house specialist translators work for the Translation Department?

Please specify the number.....

b) Which are their respective languages?

Please tick: Arabic () English () French () Portuguese () Spanish ()
Kiswahili ().

8. a) Does the Translation Department use the services of free-lance translators?

Yes () No ()

b) How many are they? Please state the number.....

9) a) What translation approach (es) does the Department use?.....

.....
.....

b) What is/are your most preferred approach(es)?

.....

10) What strategies do you use in the translation process, especially when dealing with challenges? Please indicate.....

.....

11) To what extent is the knowledge produced by both institutions disseminated in respective member countries?

12) How has good translation of documents helping the PAP/AUC fulfil the objectives? Why?.....

.....
.....

Thank You for your time and support.

Appendix B: Questionnaire/Interview (Supervisors)

UNIVERSITY OF THE WITWATERSRAND, JOHANNESBURG



Dear Sir/Madam,

I am a Masters student of the University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, currently conducting a research into the practice of translation at the Pan-African Parliament (South Africa) and the African Union Commission (Ethiopia). I would like to appeal to you: I ask for a few minutes of your time to answer the following questions. Results from this study will be for academic purposes only, and your personal information will remain confidential. I am very grateful for your time and support.

QUESTIONNAIRE/INTERVIEW (SUPERVISORS)

I have read and understood the questionnaire and information sheet provided Yes () No ()

1. When was the Translation Department established?
2. What are the functions of the Translation Department?
3. What is the structure/ anatomy of the Translation Department?
4. What are the policies governing the operation of the Translation Department?
5. Does the Translation Department operate with significant autonomy?
6. How many working languages does the PAP work in?
7. How many in-house translators does the PAP/AUC have?
 - a) Which are their respective language combinations?
 - b) Which are the areas of specialization covered?
 - c) What do you expect of the translators?
8. Does the Department have translators in all the working languages?
9. Who assigns work to translators?
10. Are translators given a daily brief?
 - a) If yes, how do you ensure that the brief is strictly adhered to?
11. Does the Translation Department use the services of free-lance translators?
 - a) How many are they?
12. What types of documents/ texts are translated by the Translation Department?
 - a) In which languages are they translated?

13. On average how many documents does a translator translate a day?
 - a) What translation approach(es) does the Department use?
 - b) What is/ are your most preferred approach(es)?
 - c) What strategies do you use in the translation process, especially when dealing with challenges? Please indicate.
 - c) What is the workforce of the Translation Department?

14. What is the process of translation at the Translation Department?


15. What are the professional qualifications of the translators at the PAP/ AUC?
 - a) What is the status of the translators?

16. To what extent is knowledge produced by the PAP/AUC disseminated in respective member countries?

17. How is good translation of documents helping the PAP/ AUC fulfil its objectives?

Thank You for your time and support

**Appendix C: Job Advertisement (Head of Interpretation Division)
CSD01/2011**

AFRICAN الاتحاد الأفريقي	UNION		UNION AFRICAINE UNIÃO AFRICANA
<i>Addis-Ababa, ETHIOPIA. O. Box: 3243 Telephone: 011 - 5 - 51 77 00 fax number: +(251-11) 5525840 /5510430</i>			

ADVERTISEMENT (HEAD OF INTERPRETATION DIVISION)- CSD01/2011

The African Union, established as a unique Pan African continental body, is charged with spearheading Africa's rapid integration and sustainable development by promoting unity, solidarity, cohesion and cooperation among the peoples of Africa and African States as well as developing a New Partnership Worldwide. Its Headquarters is located in Addis Ababa, capital city of Ethiopia.

In seeking to attain this objective, the African Union intends to build its capacity to deliver, among others, the implementation of its organizational structure and the filling of all vacant posts.

The Commission of the African Union invites applicants who are citizens of Member States for the position of Head of Interpretation Division in the Conference Services Directorate.

1. Post

Post Title: Head of Interpretation Division

Post Level: P5

Duty Stations: Addis Ababa, Ethiopia

Immediate Supervisors: Director of Conference Services

2. Major duties and responsibilities:

Under the direct supervision of the Director of Conference Services, the responsibilities and duties of the incumbent shall include the following:

- a. Formulate and implement in close consultation with the Director appropriate policies and plans for the activities of the Division;
- b. Organise and coordinate the work of regular and freelance interpreters;
- c. Develop a database of reputable interpreters in AU Member States;
- d. Ensure that terminology database is developed by linguistic units;
- e. Assess interpreters both regular and freelance as well as interpretation equipment technicians and submit to the Director regular reports on the performance and efficiency of interpreters;
- f. Assist the Director by advising on interpretation equipment acquisition, maintenance and development to ensure the availability of adequate interpretation facilities at all times;
- g. Advise and consult with the Director on all matters relating to Interpretation;
- h. Oversee the overall management of the Division: personnel, budget, performance, quality, discipline etc. in accordance with the relevant rules and procedure in force;
- i. Perform any other duties that may be assigned to her/him, including interpretation as and when necessary, by the Director.

3. Educational Qualifications: Candidates must have at least a Masters Degree (in Languages or Economics, Law, Humanities or such discipline) and Higher Diploma in Interpretation from a recognised Interpretation School.

4. Work experience: Candidates must have at least 10 years experience as an interpreter and 5 years of relevant working experience in managing and coordinating interpreters particularly at the international level.

5. Other relevant skills:

- Professionalism, teamwork, discipline;
- Excellent Managerial capacities;
- Ability to manage a multilingual team;
- Excellent interpersonal skills;
- Excellent communication skills;
- Ability to work under pressure and in a multicultural environment;
- Computer literacy.
- Excellent knowledge of French and English language. A good knowledge of a third AU working language would be an added advantage;

6. Age requirement: Candidates must preferably be between **35 and 50** years old.

7. Tenure of Appointment: The appointment will be made on a fixed term contract for a period of three (3) years, of which the first twelve months will be considered a probationary period. Thereafter, the contract will be for a period of two years renewable, subject to satisfactory performance.

8. Gender Mainstreaming: The AU Commission is an equal opportunity employer and qualified women are strongly encouraged to apply.

9. Application: To apply, please submit the following:

- a. A letter stating reasons for seeking employment with the AU Commission;
- b. A detailed and updated CV, indicating your nationality, age and gender;
- c. Names and contact details (including e-mail addresses) of three references;
- d. Certified copies of degrees and diplomas.

10. REMUNERATION: Indicative basic salary of **US\$45,551.00** per annum plus other related entitlements-e.g. Post adjustment (46% of basic salary), Housing allowance (\$16,819.20 per annum), education allowance (75% of tuition and other education related expenses for every eligible dependent up to a maximum of US\$7,800.00 per child per annum), etc for internationally recruited staff of the Commission.

Applications must be received not later than **28 January 2011** and should be addressed to:

DIRECTOR OF ADMINISTRATION AND HUMAN RESOURCE

DEVELOPMENT

AU Commission


Addis Ababa (Ethiopia)

P.O. Box 3243

Fax: 00251-1-5525840/5510430

E-mail: au-recruits@africa-union.org

**Appendix D: Job Advertisement (Head Of Translation Division) CSD
02/2012**

AFRICAN الاتحاد الأفريقي	UNION 	UNION AFRICAINE <i>UNIÃO AFRICANA</i>
Addis-Ababa, ETHIOPIA. O. Box: 3243 Telephone: 011 - 5 - 51 77 00 fax number: +(251-11) 5525840 /5510430		

ADVERTISEMENT: HEAD OF TRANSLATION DIVISION (CSD02/2011)

The African Union, established as a unique Pan African continental body, is charged with spearheading Africa's rapid integration and sustainable development by promoting unity, solidarity, cohesion and cooperation among the peoples of Africa and African States as well as developing a New Partnership Worldwide. Its Headquarters is located in Addis Ababa, capital city of Ethiopia.

In seeking to attain this objective, the African Union intends to build its capacity to deliver, among others, the implementation of its organizational structure filling of vacant post.

The Commission of the African Union invites applicants who are citizens of Member States for the position of Head of Translation Division in the Conference Services Directorate.

1. Post:

Post Title: ***Head of Translation Division***

Post Level: **P5**

Duty Station: ***Addis Ababa, Ethiopia***

Immediate Supervisor: **Director of Conference Services**

2. Major duties and responsibilities:

Under the direct supervision of the Director of Conference Services, the responsibilities and duties of the incumbent shall include the following:

- a. Formulate and implement in close consultation with the Director appropriate policies and plans for the activities of the Division;
- b. Organise and coordinate the work of Revisers and Translators both regular and freelance;
- c. Develop a database of reputable translators in AU Member States;
- d. Ensure that terminology database is developed by the linguistic units;
- e. Assess revisers, translators and secretaries both regular and freelance and submit to the Director regular reports on the performance and efficiency of revisers, translators, proof-readers and Typing pool secretaries;
- f. Ensure the proper and faithful translation, revision, proof-reading and typing of documents;
- g. Assist the Director by advising on the acquisition of required translation tools software and reference books for the use of Revisers and translators, with the ultimate objective of having a proper reference unit and data base;
- h. Oversee the overall management of the Division: personnel, budget, performance, quality, discipline etc. in accordance with the prevailing rules and procedures.
- i. Perform any other duties that may be assigned to him/her, including translation as and when necessary, by the Director.

3. Educational Qualifications: Candidates must have at least Masters Degree (in Languages, Economics, Law, Humanities or such discipline) and a Higher Diploma in Translation from a recognised school of Translation.

4. Work experience: Candidates must have at least 10 years experience as a reviser and 5 years of relevant working experience in managing and coordinating translators particularly at the international level.

5. Other relevant skills:

- Professionalism, Teamwork, discipline;
- Excellent managerial capacities;
- Ability to manage a multilingual team;
- Excellent interpersonal skills;
-
- +Excellent communication skills;
- Ability to work under pressure and in a multicultural environment;
- Computer literacy.
- Excellent writing skills;
- Excellent knowledge of French and English language. A good knowledge of a third AU working language would be an added advantage;

6. **Age requirement:** Candidates must preferably be between **35 and 50** years old.
7. **Tenure of Appointment:** The appointment will be made on a fixed term contract for a period of three (3) years, of which the first twelve months will be considered a probationary period. Thereafter, the contract will be for a period of two years renewable, subject to satisfactory performance.
8. **Gender Mainstreaming:** The AU Commission is an equal opportunity employer and qualified women are strongly encouraged to apply.
9. **Application:** To apply, please submit the following:

A letter stating reasons for seeking employment with the AU Commission;

- a. A detailed and updated CV, indicating your nationality, age and gender;
- b. Names and contact details (including e-mail addresses) of three references;
- c. Certified copies of degrees and diplomas.

REMUNERATION: Indicative basic salary of **US\$45,551.00** per annum plus other related entitlements-e.g. Post adjustment (46% of basic salary), Housing allowance (\$16,819.20 per annum), education allowance (75% of tuition and other education related expenses for every eligible dependent up to a maximum of US\$7,800.00 per child per annum), etc for internationally recruited staff of the Commission.

10. **Applications** must be received not later than **28 January 2011** and should be addressed to:

The Director of Administration and Human Resource Development

AU Commission

Addis Ababa (Ethiopia)

P.O. Box 3243

Fax: 00251-1-5525840/5510430

E-mail: au-recruits@africa-union.org

**Appendix E: Job Advertisement Interpreter/Translator-Arabic-
PAP/ADV/02/2012**

**PAN-AFRICAN
PARLIAMENT**



PARLEMENT PANAFRICAIN

البرلمان الأفريقي

PARLAMENTO PAN-AFRICANO

JOB ADVERTISEMENT
Interpreter/Translator – Arabic (Regular)
REF: PAP/ADV/02/2012

The Pan-African Parliament (PAP) is an organ of the African Union whose key objective is to ensure the full participation of the peoples of Africa in governance and economic integration of the continent. The PAP currently exercises advisory and consultative powers though the ultimate aim is for it to evolve into, a fully fledged legislative organ whose members would be elected by universal adult suffrage.

In seeking to achieve its objectives, the Pan African Parliament intends to strengthen its capacity to deliver by operationalizing its processes and structures and recruiting appropriate human resource.

The Pan African Parliament therefore, invites applicants who are citizens of Member States of the African Union for the following position.

POST DETAILS	
POST TITLE	Interpreter /Translator - Arabic
POST LEVEL	P4
	Pan-African Parliament
LOCATION	Midrand, Johannesburg, Republic of South Africa
IMMEDIATE SUPERVISOR	Deputy Clerk – Legislative Business

Major duties and responsibilities:

As Interpreter:

- To provide proper, clear, faithful interpretation from English or French into Arabic during various conferences and meetings of the Parliament, using the standard, clear and accurate language;

In doing this,

- check appropriate references to ensure exact understanding and use of PAP technical terminologies;
 - consult colleagues, specialized technical dictionaries/ glossaries;
 - Keep abreast with developments in the language field, both in the source and target languages, by compiling and regularly up-dating specific terminologies, phrases, acronyms and special expressions in order to widen the stock of vocabulary with the aim of enhancing skill and ability;
- b. Help develop terminology /lexicons of the PAP;
- c. Provide consecutive interpretation, when required, during audiences and of statements at conferences, meetings, discussions, etc;

As Translator

- a. To translate properly documents, primarily from English or French language into Arabic, ensuring the highest standard of accuracy, and maintaining the spirit, context, quality, technical language and nuances of the original version, using precise, clear and proper terminology;

To do this work, the translator shall:

- Check appropriate sources of reference;
- Keep abreast with developments in both the source and target languages by up-dating specific terminologies, phrases, special expressions, lexicons and acronyms in order to expand vocabulary and enhance skills;
- Regularly consult colleagues, authors of texts and specialised technical dictionaries/ glossaries, data banks etc..;
- Propose terminology materials for the PAP terminology.

3. Educational Qualifications: Applicants must have at least a Bachelors Degree in Languages, and a professional qualification from a recognised school of Interpretation /Translation.

4. Work experience: Applicants must have at least 8 years of progressively relevant working experience in Interpretation and Translation in an institution or International meetings on diverse issues. Applicants must be able to type and produce their work independently.

5. Other relevant skills:

- Professionalism;
- Excellent interpersonal skills;
- Excellent communication skills;
- Ability to work under pressure;
- A good knowledge of a third AU working language would be an added advantage;
- Knowledge of ERP - SAP is desirable;

- Computer literacy.

6. **Age requirement:** Candidates must be between 35 and 50 years old.
7. **Tenure of Appointment:** The appointment will be made on a fixed term contract for a period of three (3) years, of which the first twelve months will be considered as a probationary period. Thereafter, the contract will be for a period of two years renewable, subject to satisfactory performance.
8. **Gender Mainstreaming:** The PAP is an equal opportunity employer and qualified women are strongly encouraged to apply.
9. **Application:** To apply, please submit the following:
 - a. A letter stating reasons for seeking employment with the PAP;
 - b. A detailed and updated CV, indicating your nationality, age and gender;
 - c. Names and contact details (including e-mail address) of three references;
 - d. Certified copies of degrees and diplomas.
10. **Remuneration:** Indicative basic salary of **US\$38,489.00** per annum plus other related entitlements (e.g. post adjustment, housing allowance, education allowance, etc.) in accordance with the Rules and Regulations governing International Civil Servants of the African Union. These allowances, however, do not apply to locally recruited candidates (Citizens of the Republic of South Africa).

Applications must be received not later than **May 04, 2012** and should be addressed to:

**Clerk of Parliament
Pan-African Parliament
Gallagher Estate
Private Bag X16
Midrand 1685
Johannesburg
Republic of South Africa
Fax: +27 11 545 5138/6**

E-mail: pap-recruits@panafricanparliament.org

Only shortlisted candidates will be contacted

Appendix F: Protocol to the Treaty establishing the African Economic Community (English ST- French TT at Appendix G)

**PROTOCOL TO THE TREATY ESTABLISHING THE AFRICAN ECONOMIC COMMUNITY
RELATING
TO THE PAN-AFRICAN PARLIAMENT**

PREAMBLE

The Member States of the Organization of African Unity State Parties to the Treaty Establishing the African Economic Community:

Bearing in mind the Sirte Declaration adopted at the Fourth Extraordinary Session of the Assembly of Heads of State and Government held in the Great Socialist People's Libyan Arab Jamahiriya on 9.9.99 establishing the African Union and calling for the speedy establishment of the institutions provided for in the Treaty establishing the African Economic Community signed in Abuja, Nigeria, on 3 June, 1991 and the establishment of the Pan-African Parliament by the year 2000;

Noting, in particular, the adoption by the Assembly of Heads of State and Government meeting in its 36th Ordinary Session in Lome, Togo, from 10 to 12 July, 2000, of the Constitutive Act of the African Union, thereby giving concrete expression to the common vision of a united, integrated and strong Africa;

Further noting that the establishment of the Pan-Parliament is informed by a vision to provide a common platform for African peoples and their grass-roots organizations to be more involved in discussions and decision-making on the problems and challenges facing the Continent.

Conscious of the imperative and urgent need to further consolidate the aspiration of the African peoples for greater unity, solidarity and cohesion in a larger community transcending cultural, ideological, ethnic, religious and national differences;

Considering the principles and objectives stated in the Charter of the Organization of African Unity;

Further considering that Articles 7 and 14 of the Treaty establishing the African Economic Community provide for a Pan-African Parliament of the Community, whose composition, functions, powers and organization shall be defined in a related Protocol;

Recalling the Cairo Agenda for Action which was endorsed by the Thirty-first Ordinary Session of the Assembly held in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, from 26 to 28 June 1995 (AHG/Res. 236 (XXXI)), and which recommended the speeding up of the rationalization of the institutional framework in order to achieve economic integration at the regional level;

Recalling further the Declaration on the Political and Socio-Economic Situation in Africa and the Fundamental Changes Taking Place in the World, which was adopted by the

Twenty-sixth Ordinary Session of the Assembly in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, on 11 July 1990;

Considering that by the Algiers Declaration (AHG/Decl.1 (XXXV) of 14 July 1999 the Assembly reaffirmed its faith in the African Economic Community;

Determined to promote democratic principles and popular participation, to consolidate democratic institutions and culture and to ensure good governance;

Further determined to promote and protect human and peoples' rights in accordance with the African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights and other relevant human rights instruments;

Conscious of the obligations and legal implications for Member States of the need to establish the Pan-African Parliament;

Firmly convinced that the establishment of the Pan-African Parliament will ensure effectively the full participation of the African peoples in the economic development and integration of the continent;

HEREBY AGREE AS FOLLOWS:

Article 1
Definitions

In this Protocol, the following expressions shall have the meanings assigned to them hereunder:

"Assembly" means the Assembly of Heads of State and Government of the Community;

"Bureau" means the officers of the Pan-African Parliament as provided for in Article 12 (5) of this Protocol;

"Community" means the African Economic Community;

"Council" means the Council of Ministers of the Community;

"Court of Justice" means the Court of the Community;

"General Secretariat" means the General Secretariat of the Community;

"Member of Pan-African Parliament" or "Pan-African Parliamentarian" means a representative elected or designated in accordance with Article 5 of this Protocol;

"Member State" or "Member States", unless the context otherwise prescribes, means Member State or Member States of the Community;

"OAU" means the Organization of African Unity;

"President" means the Member of the Pan-African Parliament elected to conduct the business of Parliament in accordance with Article 12 (2) of this Protocol;

"Region of Africa" shall have the meaning assigned to it in Article 1 of the Treaty establishing the African Economic Community;

"Secretary General" means the Secretary General of the Community;

"Treaty" means the Treaty establishing the African Economic Community.

Article 2

Establishment of the Pan-African Parliament

1. Member States hereby establish a Pan-African Parliament the composition, functions, powers and organization of which shall be governed by the present Protocol.
2. The Pan-African Parliamentarians shall represent all the peoples of Africa.
3. The ultimate aim of the Pan-African Parliament shall be to evolve into an institution with full legislative powers, whose members are elected by universal adult suffrage. However, until such time as the Member States decide otherwise by an amendment to this Protocol:
 - i) The Pan-African Parliament shall have consultative and advisory powers only; and
 - ii) The Members of the Pan-African Parliament shall be appointed as provided for in Article 4 of this Protocol.

Article 3

Objectives

The objectives of the Pan-African Parliament shall be to:

1. facilitate the effective implementation of the policies and objectives of the OAU/AEC and, ultimately, of the African Union;
2. promote the principles of human rights and democracy in Africa;
3. encourage good governance, transparency and accountability in Member States;
4. familiarize the peoples of Africa with the objectives and policies aimed at integrating the African Continent within the framework of the establishment of the African Union;
5. promote peace, security and stability;

6. contribute to a more prosperous future for the peoples of Africa by promoting collective self-reliance and economic recovery;
7. facilitate cooperation and development in Africa;
8. strengthen Continental solidarity and build a sense of common destiny among the peoples of Africa;
9. facilitate cooperation among Regional Economic Communities and their Parliamentary fora.

Article 4 Composition

1. Member States shall be represented in the Pan-African Parliament by an equal number of Parliamentarians;
2. Each Member State shall be represented in the Pan-African Parliament by five (5) members, at least one of whom must be a woman;
3. The representation of each Member State must reflect the diversity of political opinions in each National Parliament or other deliberative organ.

ARTICLE 5 Election, Tenure and Vacancies

1. The Pan-African Parliamentarians shall be elected or designated by the respective National Parliaments or any other deliberative organs of the Member States, from among their members.
2. The Assembly shall determine the beginning of the first term of office of the Pan-African Parliament at its session immediately following the entry into force of this Protocol.
3. The term of a Member of the Pan-African Parliament shall run concurrently with his or her term in the National Parliament or other deliberative organ.
4. The seat of a Member of the Pan-African Parliament shall become vacant if he or she:
 - a) dies;
 - b) resigns in writing to the President;
 - c) is unable to perform his or her functions for reasons of physical or mental incapacity;
 - d) is removed on grounds of misconduct;
 - e) ceases to be a Member of the National Parliament or other deliberative organ;

f) is recalled by the National Parliament or other deliberative organ; or
g) ceases to be a Pan-African Parliamentarian in terms of Article 19 of this Protocol.

Article 6
Vote

The Pan-African Parliamentarians shall vote in their personal and independent capacity.

Article 7
Incompatibility

Membership of the Pan-African Parliament shall not be compatible with the exercise of executive or judicial functions in a Member State.

Article 8
**Privileges and Immunities of Pan-African
Parliamentarians**

1. The Pan-African Parliamentarians, while exercising their functions, shall enjoy in the territory of each Member State the immunities and privileges extended to representatives of Member States under the General Convention on the Privileges and Immunities of the OAU and the Vienna Convention on Diplomatic Relations.

2. Without prejudice to Paragraph (1) of this Article, the Pan-African Parliament shall have the power to waive the immunity of a member in accordance with its Rules of Procedure.

Article 9
Parliamentary Immunities

1. The Pan-African Parliamentarians shall enjoy parliamentary immunity in each Member State. Accordingly, a member of the Pan-African Parliament shall not be liable to civil or criminal proceedings, arrest, imprisonment or damages for what is said or done by him or her within or outside the Pan-African Parliament in his or her capacity as a member of Parliament in the discharge of his or her duties.

2. Without prejudice to Paragraph (1) of this Article, the Pan-African Parliament shall have the power to waive the immunity of a member in accordance with its Rules of Procedure.

Article 10
Allowance

The Pan-African Parliamentarians shall be paid an allowance to meet expenses in the discharge of their duties.

Article 11

Functions and Powers

The Pan-African Parliament shall be vested with legislative powers to be defined by the Assembly. However, during the first term of its existence, the Pan-African Parliament shall exercise advisory and consultative powers only. In this regard, it may:

1. Examine, discuss or express an opinion on any matter, either on its own initiative or at the request of the Assembly or other policy organs and make any recommendations it may deem fit relating to, *inter alia*, matters pertaining to respect of human rights, the consolidation of democratic institutions and the culture of democracy, as well as the promotion of good governance and the rule of law.
2. Discuss its budget and the budget of the Community and make recommendations thereon prior to its approval by the Assembly.
3. Work towards the harmonization or co-ordination of the laws of Member States.
4. Make recommendations aimed at contributing to the attainment of the objectives of the OAU/AEC and draw attention to the challenges facing the integration process in Africa as well as the strategies for dealing with them.
5. Request officials of the OAU/AEC to attend its sessions, produce documents or assist in the discharge of its duties.
6. Promote the programmes and objectives of the OAU/AEC, in the constituencies of the Member States.
7. Promote the coordination and harmonization of policies, measures, programmes and activities of the Regional Economic Communities and the parliamentary fora of Africa.
8. Adopt its Rules of Procedure, elect its own President and propose to the Council and the Assembly the size and nature of the support staff of the Pan-African Parliament.
9. Perform such other functions as it deems appropriate to achieve the objectives set out in Article 3 of this Protocol.

Article 12

Rules of Procedure and Organization of the Pan-African Parliament

1. The Pan-African Parliament shall adopt its own Rules of Procedure on the basis of a two-thirds majority of all its members.
2. The Pan-African Parliament shall elect, at its first sitting following its election, by secret ballot, from among its members and in accordance with its Rules of Procedure, a

President and four (4) Vice Presidents representing the Regions of Africa as determined by the OAU. The election shall, in each case, be by simple majority of the members present and voting.

3. The terms of office of the President and the Vice-Presidents shall run with the National Parliament or the deliberative organ which elects or designates them.

4. The Vice-Presidents shall be ranked in the order of first, second, third and fourth initially, in accordance with the result of the vote and subsequently by rotation.

5. The President and the Vice-Presidents shall be the Officers of the Pan-African Parliament. The officers, under the control and direction of the President and subject to such directives as may be issued by the Pan-African Parliament, shall be responsible for the management and administration of the affairs and facilities of the Pan-African Parliament and its organs. In the discharge of their duties, the Officers shall be assisted by the Clerk and the two Deputy Clerks.

6. The Pan-African Parliament shall appoint a Clerk, two Deputy Clerks and such other staff and functionaries as it may deem necessary for the proper discharge of its functions and may by regulations provide for their terms and conditions of office in accordance with the relevant OAU practice as appropriate.

7. The President shall preside over all Parliamentary proceedings except those held in committee and, in his or her absence, the Vice-Presidents shall act in rotation, in accordance with the Rules of Procedure which shall also deal with the powers of the person presiding over Parliamentary proceedings.

8. The Office of the President or Vice-President shall become vacant if he or she:

- a) dies;
- b) resigns in writing;
- c) is unable to perform his or her functions for reasons of physical or mental incapacity;
- d) is removed on grounds of misconduct;
- e) ceases to be a Member of the National Parliament or other deliberative organ;
- f) is recalled by the National Parliament or other deliberative organ; or
- g) ceases to be a Pan-African Parliamentarian in terms of Article 19 of this Protocol.

9. Removal on the grounds stipulated in 8 (c) or (d) above shall be on a motion to be decided on by secret ballot and supported at the end of debate by two-thirds majority of

all the Pan-African Parliamentarians. In the case of removal under the ground stipulated in 8 (c), the motion shall, in addition, be supported by a medical report.

10. A vacancy in the Office of the President or Vice-President shall be filled at the sitting of the Pan-African Parliament immediately following its occurrence.

11. The quorum for a meeting of the Pan-African Parliament shall be constituted by a simple majority.

12. Each Pan-African Parliamentarian shall have one vote. Decisions shall be made by consensus or, failing which, by a two-thirds majority of all the Members present and voting. However, procedural matters, including the question of whether a matter is one of the procedure or not, shall be decided by a simple majority of those present and voting, unless otherwise stipulated in the Rules of Procedure. In the event of an equal number of votes, the person presiding shall have a casting vote.

13. The Pan-African Parliament may establish such committees, as it deems fit, for the proper discharge of its functions and in accordance with its Rules of Procedure.

14. Until the Pan-African Parliament appoints its staff, the General Secretariat of the OAU shall act as its Secretariat.

Article 13 Oath of Office

At its first sitting, after the election and before proceeding with any other matter, the Pan-African Parliamentarians shall take an oath or make a solemn declaration which shall be set out as an Addendum to this Protocol.

Article 14 Sessions

1. The inaugural session shall be presided over by the Chairperson of the OAU/AEC until the election of the President of the Pan-African Parliament who shall thereafter preside.

2. The Pan-African Parliament shall meet in ordinary session at least twice a year, within a period to be determined in the Rules of Procedure. Each ordinary session may last up to one month.

3. Two-thirds of the Pan-African Parliamentarians, the Assembly or the Council, through the Chairperson of the OAU, may, by written notification addressed to the President, request an Extraordinary session. The request shall provide a motivation for and details of the matters to be discussed at the proposed Extraordinary session. The President shall convene such a session which shall discuss only the matters stipulated in the request. The session shall end upon exhaustion of the agenda.

4. The proceedings of the Pan-African Parliament shall be open to the public, unless otherwise directed by the Bureau.

Article 15
Budget

1. The annual budget of the Pan-African Parliament shall constitute an integral part of the regular budget of the OAU/AEC.

2. The budget shall be drawn up by the Pan-African Parliament in accordance with the Financial Rules and Regulations of the OAU/AEC and shall be approved by the Assembly until such time as the Pan-African Parliament shall start to exercise legislative powers.

Article 16
Seat of the Pan-African Parliament

The seat of the Pan-African Parliament shall be determined by the Assembly and shall be located in the territory of a State Party to this Protocol. However, the Pan-African Parliament may convene in the territory of any Member State at the invitation of that Member State.

Article 17
Working Languages

The working languages of the Pan-African Parliament shall be, if possible, African languages, Arabic, English, French and Portuguese.

Article 18
The Relationship between the Pan-African Parliament and the
Parliaments of Regional Economic Communities
and National Parliaments or Other Deliberative Organs.

The Pan-African Parliament shall work in close co-operation with the Parliaments of the Regional Economic Communities and the National Parliaments or other deliberative organs of Member States. To this effect, the Pan-African Parliament may, in accordance with its Rules of Procedure, convene annual consultative fora with the Parliaments of the Regional Economic Communities and the National Parliaments or other deliberative organs to discuss matters of common interest.

Article 19
Withdrawal

The Pan-African Parliamentarians from a Member State which withdraws from the Community shall automatically cease to be Pan-African Parliamentarians.

Article 20
Interpretation

The Court of Justice shall be seized with all matters of interpretation emanating from this Protocol. Pending its establishment, such matters shall be submitted to the Assembly which shall decide by a two-thirds majority.

Article 21
Signature and Ratification

1. This Protocol shall be signed and ratified by the Member States in accordance with their respective Constitutional procedures.
2. The instruments of ratification or accession shall be deposited with the Secretary General of the OAU.

Article 22
Entry into Force

This Protocol shall enter into force thirty (30) days after the deposit of the instruments of ratification by a simple majority of the Member States.

Article 23
Accession

1. Any Member State may notify the Secretary General of its intention to accede to this Protocol after its entry into force. The Secretary General shall, upon receipt of such notification, transmit copies thereof to all Member States.
2. For any Member State acceding to this Protocol, the Protocol shall come into force on the date of the deposit of its instrument of accession.

Article 24
Amendment or Revision of the Protocol

1. This Protocol may be amended or revised by the decision of a two-thirds majority of the Assembly.
2. Any Member State party to this Protocol or the Pan-African Parliament may propose, in writing to the Secretary General, any amendment or revision of the Protocol.
3. The Secretary General shall notify the proposal to all Member States at least thirty (30) days before the meeting of the Assembly, which is to consider the proposal.

4. The Secretary General shall request the opinion of the Pan-African Parliament on the proposal and shall transmit the opinion, if any, to the Assembly, which may adopt the proposal, taking into account the opinion of the Pan-African Parliament.

5. The amendment or revision shall enter into force thirty (30) days after the deposit of the instruments of ratification with the Secretary General by two-thirds of Member States.

Article 25

Review of the Protocol

1. Five years after the entry into force of this Protocol, a Conference of the States Parties to this Protocol shall be held to review the operation and effectiveness of this Protocol, with a view to ensuring that the objectives and purposes of this Protocol, as well as the vision underlying the Protocol, are being realised and that the Protocol meets with the evolving needs of the African Continent.

2. At intervals of ten years thereafter, further Review Conferences of States Parties to this Protocol may be convened with the same objective as stated in Paragraph 1 above. Such Conferences may be convened at an interval of less than ten years, if so decided by the Pan-African Parliament.

Appendix G: Protocole au Traité instituant la CEA (French TT)

AFRICAN UNION

الإتحاد الأفريقي



UNION AFRICAINE

UNIÃO AFRICANA

Addis Ababa, ETHIOPIA P. O. Box 3243 Telephone 517 700 Fax : 517844

**PROTOCOLE AU TRAITE INSTITUANT
LA COMMUNAUTE ECONOMIQUE AFRICAINE
RELATIF AU PARLEMENT PANAFRICAIN**

Considérant en outre que les articles 7 et 14 du Traité instituant la Communauté économique africaine prévoient la création d'un parlement panafricain de la Communauté, dont la composition, les attributions, les pouvoirs et l'organisation seront définis dans un Protocole y afférent;

Rappelant le Programme d'Action du Caire (AHG/Res.236 (XXXI), entériné par la trente-et-unième session ordinaire de la Conférence tenue à Addis Abéba (Ethiopie) du 26 au 28 juin 1995, qui a recommandé l'accélération du processus de rationalisation du cadre institutionnel en vue de la réalisation de l'intégration économique au niveau régional;

Rappelant en particulier la Déclaration sur la situation politique et socio-économique en Afrique et les changements fondamentaux qui se produisent dans le monde, adoptée par la vingt-sixième session ordinaire de la Conférence à Addis Abéba (Ethiopie), le 11 juillet 1990;

Considérant que par la Déclaration d'Alger (AHG/Decl.1 (XXXV) du 14 juillet 1999, la Conférence a réaffirmé sa foi dans la Communauté économique africaine;

Résolus à promouvoir les principes démocratiques et la participation populaire, à consolider les institutions et la culture démocratiques, et à assurer la bonne gouvernance ;

Résolus également à promouvoir et à protéger les droits de l'homme et des peuples, conformément à la Charte africaine des droits de l'homme et des peuples et aux autres instruments pertinents des droits de l'homme ;

Conscients des obligations et des implications juridiques pour les Etats membres de la création du Parlement panafricain;

Fermement convaincus que la mise en place du Parlement panafricain assurera la participation effective et totale des peuples africains au développement et à l'intégration économique du continent;

DECIDENT DE CE QUI SUIIT :

ARTICLE PREMIER

Définitions

Dans le présent protocole, les expressions suivantes ont les significations qui leur sont données ci-dessous :

«Bureau » signifie le bureau du Parlement panafricain, tel que défini à l'article 12 (5) du présent Protocole ;

«Communauté» signifie la Communauté économique africaine;

«Conférence» signifie la Conférence des Chefs d'Etat et de Gouvernement de la Communauté;

«Conseil» signifie le Conseil des ministres de la Communauté:

«Cour de justice» signifie la cour de justice de la Communauté ;

«Etat membre» ou «Etats membres», sauf indication contraire, signifie un ou plusieurs Etats membres de la Communauté ;

«Membre du Parlement panafricain» ou «Parlementaires panafricains» signifie un ou plusieurs représentants élus conformément à l'article 5 du présent Protocole.

«OUA» signifie l'Organisation de l'Unité africaine.

«Président» signifie le membre du Parlement panafricain élu pour diriger les travaux du Parlement panafricain, conformément à l'article 12 (2) du présent Protocole.

«Région de l'Afrique» a la même signification que dans l'article premier du Traité instituant la Communauté ;

«Secrétaire général » signifie le Secrétaire général de la Communauté ;

«Secrétariat général» signifie le Secrétariat général de la Communauté ;

«Traité» signifie le Traité instituant la Communauté économique africaine.

ARTICLE 2

Institution du Parlement panafricain

1. Les Etats membres instituent le Parlement panafricain dont la composition, les attributions, les pouvoirs et l'organisation sont régis par le présent Protocole.
2. Les Parlementaires panafricains représentent toutes les populations africaines.
3. L'objectif ultime du Parlement panafricain est de devenir, à terme, une institution dotée des pleins pouvoirs sur le plan législatif et dont les membres sont élus au suffrage universel direct. Toutefois, jusqu'à ce que les Etats membres en décident autrement par amendement du présent Protocole :
 - (i) le Parlement panafricain ne dispose que de pouvoirs consultatifs ;
 - (ii) les membres du Parlement panafricain sont désignés conformément aux dispositions de l'article 4 du présent Protocole.

ARTICLE 3

Objectifs

Le Parlement panafricain a pour objectifs de :

1. faciliter la mise en œuvre effective des politiques et objectifs de l'OUA/Communauté et, ultérieurement, de l'Union africaine ;
2. promouvoir les principes des droits de l'homme et de la démocratie en Afrique ;

3. encourager la bonne gouvernance, la transparence et l'obligation de rendre compte dans les Etats membres ;
4. familiariser les peuples africains aux objectifs et politiques visant à intégrer le continent dans le cadre de la mise en place de l'Union africaine ;
5. promouvoir la paix, la sécurité et la stabilité ;
6. contribuer à un avenir plus prospère pour les peuples africains en favorisant l'autosuffisance collective et le redressement économique ;
7. faciliter la coopération et le développement en Afrique ;
8. renforcer la solidarité continentale et créer un sentiment de destin commun parmi les peuples africains ;
9. faciliter la coopération entre les communautés économiques régionales et leurs forums parlementaires.

ARTICLE 4
Composition

1. Au cours de la période transitoire, les Etats membres sont représentés au Parlement panafricain par un nombre égal de parlementaires.
2. Chaque Etat membre est représenté au Parlement panafricain par cinq (5) membres, dont au moins une femme.
3. La représentation de chaque Etat membre doit refléter la diversité des opinions politiques de chaque parlement ou tout autre organe législatif national.

ARTICLE 5

Election, durée du mandat et vacance de siège

1. Les parlementaires panafricains sont élus ou désignés par leurs parlements nationaux respectifs ou tout autre organe législatif des Etats membres, parmi leurs membres.
2. La Conférence détermine le début du premier mandat du Parlement panafricain lors de sa session suivant immédiatement l'entrée en vigueur du présent Protocole.
3. La durée du mandat de tout parlementaire panafricain est liée à celle de son mandat de membre de son parlement ou tout autre organe législatif national.
4. Le siège d'un membre du Parlement panafricain est vacant en cas de :
 - a) décès ;
 - b) démission par notification écrite au Président ;
 - c) incapacité physique ou mentale à exercer ses fonctions ;
 - d) destitution pour mauvaise conduite ;
 - e) perte de sa qualité de membre de son parlement ou tout autre organe législatif national ;
 - f) rappel par son parlement ou tout autre organe législatif national ;
 - g) perte de sa qualité de membre du Parlement panafricain, conformément aux dispositions de l'article 19 du présent Protocole.

ARTICLE 6

Vote

Les parlementaires panafricains votent à titre personnel et de manière indépendante.

ARTICLE 7
Incompatibilités

La fonction de membre du Parlement panafricain est incompatible avec l'exercice d'une fonction de l'exécutif ou du judiciaire dans un Etat membre.

ARTICLE 8
Privilèges et immunités des parlementaires panafricains

1. Les parlementaires panafricains jouissent sur le territoire de chaque Etat membre, dans l'exercice de leurs fonctions, des immunités et privilèges accordés aux représentants des Etats membres aux termes de la Convention générale de l'OUA sur les privilèges et immunités et de la Convention de Vienne sur les relations diplomatiques.
2. Sans préjudice du paragraphe précédent du présent article, le Parlement panafricain est habilité à lever l'immunité garantie par le présent article à un membre du Parlement panafricain, conformément à son Règlement intérieur.

ARTICLE 9
Immunité Parlementaire

1. Les parlementaires panafricains jouissent de l'immunité parlementaire sur le territoire de chaque Etat membre. En conséquence, un parlementaire panafricain ne peut faire l'objet de poursuites judiciaires en matière civile ou pénale, ni d'arrestation, emprisonnement ou condamnation à payer des dommages – intérêts pour ses déclarations ou ses actes à l'intérieur ou à l'extérieur du Parlement panafricain, dans l'exercice de ses fonctions de membre du Parlement panafricain.

2. Sans préjudice du paragraphe précédent du présent article, le Parlement panafricain est habilité à lever l'immunité garantie par le présent article à un membre du Parlement panafricain, conformément à son Règlement intérieur.

ARTICLE 10
Indemnité

Les parlementaires panafricains perçoivent une indemnité pour couvrir les dépenses afférentes à l'exercice de leurs fonctions.

ARTICLE 11
Attributions et Pouvoirs

Le Parlement panafricain est investi de pouvoirs législatifs, tels que définis par la Conférence. Toutefois, au cours du premier mandat de son existence, le Parlement panafricain n'exerce que des pouvoirs consultatifs. A cet égard, il peut :

1. Examiner, débattre ou exprimer un avis sur toutes questions, de sa propre initiative ou à la demande de la Conférence ou des autres organes de décision, et faire les recommandations qu'il juge nécessaires. Il s'agit, entre autres, des questions relatives au respect des droits de l'homme, à la consolidation des institutions démocratiques et à la culture de la démocratie, ainsi qu'à la promotion de la bonne gouvernance et de l'état de droit.
2. Examiner son budget et celui de la Communauté et faire des recommandations à ce sujet avant leur approbation par la Conférence.
3. Œuvrer à l'harmonisation ou à la coordination des lois des Etats membres.
4. Faire des recommandations visant à contribuer à la réalisation des objectifs de l'OUA/Communauté et attirer

l'attention sur les défis que pose le processus d'intégration en Afrique, et élaborer les stratégies permettant de les relever.

5. Demander aux fonctionnaires de l'OUA/Communauté d'assister à ses sessions, de présenter des documents ou de lui apporter leurs concours dans l'accomplissement de ses tâches.
6. Assurer la promotion des programmes et objectifs de l'OUA / Communauté dans les circonscriptions des Etats membres.
7. Promouvoir la coordination et l'harmonisation des politiques, mesures, programmes et activités des communautés économiques régionales et des forums parlementaires africains.
8. Adopter son règlement intérieur, élire son président et proposer au Conseil et à la Conférence l'effectif et le profil du personnel d'appui du Parlement panafricain.
9. S'acquitter de toutes autres tâches qu'il juge appropriées pour réaliser les objectifs énoncés à l'article 3 du présent Protocole.

ARTICLE 12

Règlement intérieur et organisation du Parlement panafricain

1. Le Parlement panafricain adopte son propre Règlement intérieur à la majorité des deux tiers de ses membres.
2. Au cours de sa première session après son élection, le Parlement panafricain élit au scrutin secret parmi ses membres et conformément à son Règlement intérieur, un Président et quatre (4) Vice-Présidents représentant les régions de l'Afrique, tel que déterminé par l'OUA. Dans chaque cas, l'élection se déroule à la majorité simple des membres présents et votants.

3. La durée du mandat du Président et des Vice-Présidents est celle du parlement national ou de l'organe législatif qui les élit ou les désigne.
4. Les Vice-Présidents sont classés premier, deuxième, troisième et quatrième Vice-Présidents, selon les résultats du vote dans un premier temps, et ultérieurement par rotation.
5. Le Président et les Vice-Présidents constituent le Bureau du Parlement panafricain. Le Bureau, sous le contrôle et la direction du Président, et sous réserve des directives que peut lui donner le Parlement panafricain, est responsable de la gestion et de l'administration des affaires et des services du Parlement panafricain et de ses organes. Dans l'exercice de ses fonctions, le Bureau est assisté par le Secrétaire et les Secrétaires adjoints.
6. Le Parlement panafricain nomme un Secrétaire et deux Secrétaires adjoints, ainsi que le personnel et les fonctionnaires qu'il juge nécessaires pour exercer normalement ses fonctions et peut, par règlements, fixer les modalités et conditions de leur service, conformément à la pratique en vigueur à l'OUA.
7. Le Président préside tous les débats parlementaires, à l'exception de ceux qui se déroulent en comité et, en son absence, les Vice-Présidents assurent l'intérim par rotation, conformément au Règlement intérieur qui définit également les pouvoirs de la personne qui préside les débats parlementaires.
8. Les postes de Président ou de Vice-Président sont vacants en cas de :
 - a) décès ;
 - b) démission par notification écrite ;
 - c) incapacité physique ou mentale à exercer ses fonctions ;
 - d) destitution pour mauvaise conduite ;
 - e) perte de la qualité de membre de son Parlement ou tout autre organe législatif national ;

- f) **rappel par le Parlement national ou tout autre organe législatif national ;**
 - g) **perte de la qualité de membre du Parlement panafricain conformément aux dispositions de l'article 19 du présent Protocole.**
9. **La destitution pour les motifs stipulés dans les alinéas 8(c) ou (d) ci-dessus se fait par motion appuyée et votée au scrutin secret à l'issue des débats par la majorité des deux tiers de tous les parlementaires panafricains. Dans le cas d'une destitution au titre de l'alinéa 8(c) ci-dessus, la motion est appuyée par un rapport médical.**
 10. **La vacance des postes de Président et de Vice-Président est pourvue pendant la session du parlement panafricain intervenant immédiatement après ladite vacance.**
 11. **Le quorum pour toute session du Parlement panafricain est constitué de la majorité simple.**
 12. **Chaque parlementaire panafricain a droit à une voix. Les décisions sont prises par consensus ou, à défaut, à la majorité des deux tiers des membres présents et votants. Toutefois, les questions de procédure, y compris la question de savoir s'il s'agit oui ou non d'une question de procédure, sont décidées à la majorité simple des membres présents et votants, sauf dispositions contraires du Règlement intérieur. En cas de partage égal des voix, la voix du président de séance est prépondérante.**
 13. **Le Parlement panafricain peut créer les commissions qu'il juge utiles pour l'assister dans ses fonctions, et ce, conformément à son Règlement intérieur.**
 14. **Jusqu'à ce que le Parlement panafricain dispose de son personnel, le Secrétariat général de l'OUA fait office de secrétariat.**

ARTICLE 13
Serment d'entrée en fonctions

Lors de la première session suivant les élections et avant d'entreprendre toute autre tâche, les parlementaires panafricains prêtent serment ou font une déclaration solennelle. Le texte du Serment ou de la Déclaration est annexé au présent Protocole.

ARTICLE 14
Sessions

1. Le Président en exercice de l'OUA/Communauté préside la session inaugurale du Parlement panafricain jusqu'à l'élection du président du Parlement panafricain qui, par la suite, assure la présidence.
2. Le Parlement panafricain se réunit en session ordinaire au moins deux fois par an. La période est déterminée dans le Règlement intérieur. Chaque session ordinaire peut durer jusqu'à un mois.
3. Deux tiers des parlementaires panafricains, la Conférence ou le Conseil, par le biais du Président en exercice de l'OUA, peuvent demander une session extraordinaire du Parlement panafricain en introduisant une requête écrite auprès du Président. La requête doit être motivée et indiquer en détail les questions devant être examinées au cours de ladite session. Le Président convoque ladite session qui ne pourra discuter que des questions indiquées dans la requête. La session prend fin à l'épuisement de l'ordre du jour.
4. Les délibérations du Parlement panafricain sont publiques, à moins que le Bureau n'en décide autrement.

ARTICLE 15
Budget

1. Le budget annuel du Parlement panafricain constitue une partie intégrante du budget ordinaire de l'OUA/Communauté.

2. Le budget est arrêté par le Parlement panafricain conformément au Règlement financier de l'OUA/Communauté et est approuvé par la Conférence jusqu'à ce que le Parlement panafricain dispose de pouvoirs législatifs

ARTICLE 16

Siège du Parlement panafricain

Le Siège du Parlement panafricain est fixé par la Conférence et est situé sur le territoire d'un Etat membre partie au présent Protocole. Toutefois, le Parlement panafricain peut se réunir sur le territoire de n'importe quel autre Etat membre, sur invitation de celui-ci.

ARTICLE 17

Langues de travail

Les langues de travail du Parlement panafricain sont, si possible, des langues africaines ainsi que l'arabe, l'anglais, le français et le portugais.

ARTICLE 18

Relations entre le Parlement panafricain, les parlements des communautés économiques régionales et les parlements nationaux ou tous autres organes législatifs nationaux

Le Parlement panafricain travaille en étroite collaboration avec les parlements des communautés économiques régionales et les parlements ou tous autres organes législatifs nationaux. A cet égard, le Parlement panafricain peut, conformément à son Règlement intérieur, convoquer des forums consultatifs annuels avec les parlements des communautés économiques régionales et les parlements ou tous autres organes législatifs nationaux, pour discuter des questions d'intérêt commun.

ARTICLE 19

Retrait

Tout parlementaire panafricain ressortissant d'un Etat membre qui se retire de la Communauté perd d'office la qualité de parlementaire panafricain.

ARTICLE 20
Interprétation

Toute question née de l'interprétation du présent Protocole est décidée par la Cour de justice et, jusqu'à la création de la Cour, à la majorité des deux tiers de la Conférence.

ARTICLE 21
Signature et ratification

1. Le présent Protocole est signé et ratifié par les Etats membres conformément à leurs procédures constitutionnelles respectives.
2. Les instruments de ratification ou d'adhésion sont déposés auprès du Secrétaire général de l'OUA.

ARTICLE 22
Entrée en vigueur

Le présent Protocole entre en vigueur trente (30) jours après le dépôt des instruments de ratification par la majorité simple des Etats membres.

ARTICLE 23
Adhésion

1. Tout Etat membre peut notifier au Secrétaire général son intention d'adhérer au présent Protocole, après son entrée en vigueur. Le Secrétaire général, après réception d'une telle notification, en transmet copie à tous les Etats membres.
2. Pour tout Etat membre adhérant au présent Protocole, le Protocole entre en vigueur, pour l'Etat membre concerné, à la date du dépôt de son instrument d'adhésion.

ARTICLE 24

Amendement ou révision du Protocole

1. Le présent Protocole peut être amendé ou révisé par décision prise à la majorité des deux tiers de la Conférence.
2. Tout Etat membre partie au présent Protocole ou le Parlement panafricain peut proposer, par requête écrite adressée au Secrétaire général, un amendement ou une révision du Protocole.
3. Le Secrétaire général notifie une telle proposition à tous les Etats membres, au moins 30 jours avant la réunion de la Conférence qui doit l'examiner.
4. Le Secrétaire général sollicite l'avis du Parlement panafricain sur la proposition et le communique, le cas échéant, à la Conférence qui peut adopter la proposition en prenant en compte l'avis du Parlement panafricain.
5. L'amendement ou la révision entre en vigueur trente (30) jours après le dépôt des instruments de sa ratification auprès du Secrétaire général par les deux-tiers des Etats membres.

ARTICLE 25

Evaluation du Protocole

1. Cinq ans après l'entrée en vigueur du présent Protocole, une Conférence des Etats parties au présent Protocole se tient pour en évaluer la mise en œuvre et l'efficacité, ainsi que le système de représentation au Parlement panafricain afin de s'assurer de la réalisation des ses buts et objectifs, ainsi que de sa vision au regard des besoins croissants des pays africains.
2. Par la suite, d'autres conférences d'évaluation peuvent être organisées par les Etats parties à des intervalles de dix ans, tel que prévu au paragraphe précédent. De telles conférences d'évaluation peuvent être convoquées à des intervalles de moins de dix ans, si le Parlement panafricain en décide ainsi.

Fait à Syrte, Libye, le 2 Mars 2001.

**ADOPTÉ PAR LA 5^{ÈME} SESSION EXTRAORDINAIRE DE LA
CONFÉRENCE DES CHEFS D'ÉTAT ET DE GOUVERNEMENT
2 MARS, 2001 - SYRTE, LIBYE**

1. République d'Afrique du Sud

.....

2. République Algérienne Démocratique et Populaire

.....

3. République d'Angola

.....

4. République du Bénin

.....

5. République du Botswana

.....

6. Burkina Faso

.....

7. République du Burundi

.....

8. République du Cameroun

.....

9. République du Cap Vert

.....

10. République Centrafricaine

.....

11. République Fédérale Islamique des Comores

.....

12. République du Congo

.....

13. République Démocratique du Congo

.....

14. République de Côte d'Ivoire

.....

15. République de Djibouti

.....

16. République Arabe d'Egypte

.....

17. Etat d'Erythrée

.....

18. République Fédérale et Démocratique d'Ethiopie

.....

19. République Gabonaise

.....

20. République de Gambie

.....

21. République du Ghana

.....

22. République de Guinée

.....

23. République de Guinée Bissau

.....

24. République de Guinée Equatoriale

.....

25. République du Kenya

.....

26. Royaume du Lesotho

.....

27. République du Libéria

.....

28. La Grande Jamahiriya Arabe Libyenne Populaire et Socialiste

.....

29. République de Madagascar

.....

30. République du Malawi

.....

31. République du Mali

.....

32. République de Maurice

.....

33. République Islamique de Mauritanie

.....

34. République du Mozambique

.....

35. République de Namibie

.....

36. République du Niger

.....

37. République Fédérale du Nigéria

.....

38. République d'Ouganda

.....

39. République du Rwanda

.....

40. République Arabe Sahraoui Démocratique

.....

41. République de Sao Tome et Principe

.....

42. République du Sénégal

.....

43. République des Seychelles

.....

44. République de Sierra Leone

.....

45. République de Somalie

.....

46. République du Soudan

.....

47. Royaume du Swaziland

.....

48. République Unie de Tanzanie

.....

49. République du Tchad

.....

50. République Togolaise

.....

51. République de Tunisie

.....

52. République de Zambie

.....

53. République du Zimbabwe

.....

**Appendix H: Oath/Solemn Declaration of Allegiance (English ST- French TT
at Appendix I)**

PAN-AFRICAN PARLIAMENT

البرلمان الأفريقي



PARLEMENT PANAFRICAIN

PARLAMENTO PAN-AFRICANO

**OATH/SOLEMN DECLARATION OF ALLEGIANCE
(RULE NO 9)**

THE MEMBER OF THE PAN-AFRICAN PARLIAMENT

I.....hereby swear/solemnly declare that:
(full name of Member)

(i) I will perform my functions as a Member of the Pan-African Parliament to the best of my ability and with honour and dignity in the service of the peoples of Africa;

(ii) I will be faithful and bear true allegiance to the African Union and will preserve, protect and defend the Constitutive Act of the African Union and the protocol to the Treaty establishing the African Economic Community relating to the Pan-African Parliament, as by law established; and

(iii) I will promote adherence to the principles of good governance, democracy, human rights, international humanitarian law, peace, stability and all objectives of the Pan-African Parliament.

So help me God (in the case of an Oath); or

I so affirm

Done at Midrand, Johannesburg, on thisday of.....200...

Signed _____ Signed _____

..... Dr. Gertrude Ibengwe Mongella, MP
The Member President of PAP

Gallagher Estate, Private Bag X16, Midrand 1685, Gauteng Province, South Africa
Tel: (+27) 11 545 5000 Fax: (+27) 11 545 5136 - Web site: www.pan-african-parliament.org Email: secretariat@panafricanparliament.org

Appendix I: Prestation de Serment des Membres du Parlement Panafricain (French TT)

PAN-AFRICAN PARLIAMENT

البرلمان الأفريقي



PARLEMENT PANAFRICAIN

PARLAMENTO PAN-AFRICANO

**PRESTATION DE SERMENT DES MEMBRES DU PARLEMENT
PANAFRICAIN
(ARTICLE N° 9)**

Moi....., Député au Parlement Panafricain ;

Prends l'engagement solennel, devant les peuples africains, devant Dieu :

(i) de m'acquitter de mes fonctions de Membre du Parlement Panafricain, avec honneur et dignité au service des peuples africains ;

(ii) de servir avec loyauté et entière allégeance à l'Union Africaine, de préserver, protéger et défendre l'Acte Constitutif de l'Union Africaine et le Protocole au Traité portant création de la Communauté Economique Africaine relative au Parlement Panafricain tel que définit par la loi ; et

(iii) de promouvoir le respect des principes de bonne gouvernance, de démocratie, ainsi que ceux relatifs aux droits humains, au droit international humanitaire, à la paix, à la stabilité et aux objectifs du Parlement Panafricain.

Je le jure (Serment),

Fait à Midrand, Johannesburg, ledu mois dede l'année deux mille

(Nom et prénom du Membre)

Hon. Dr. Gertrude Ibengwe Mongella
Présidente du Parlement Panafricain

Gallagher Estate, Private Bag X16, Midrand 1685, Gauteng Province, South Africa
Tel: (+27) 11 545 5000 Fax: (+27) 11 545 5136 - Web site: www.pan-african-parliament.org
Email: secretariat@panafricanparliament.org

*Appendix J: Project d'Allocution du Président de la Commission, Dr Jean Ping
(French ST- English TT at Appendix K)*

AFRICAN UNION
الاتحاد الأفريقي



UNION AFRICAINE
UNIÃO AFRICANA

P.O. Box: 3243, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, Tel.: (251-11) 551 7700 Fax: (251-11) 551 93 21

(SEUL LE PRONONCE FAIT FOI)

PROJET D'ALLOCATION DU PRÉSIDENT DE LA COMMISSION, DR. JEAN PING,
À LA SÉANCE D'OUVERTURE DE LA 19^{ème} SESSION ORDINAIRE DE LA
CONFERENCE DE L'UNION AFRICAINE

AddisAbéba, 15 juillet 2012

Excellence Monsieur Thomas Boni Yayi, Président de la République du Bénin, Président de l'Union africaine,

Altesse Royale, Sheikh Sabah Al-Ahmed Al-Jaber Al-Sabah, Émir du Koweït, Hôte d'honneur de ce Sommet,

Excellences Madame et Messieurs Les Chefs d'État et de Gouvernement,

Excellences Mesdames Les Premières Dames d'Afrique,

Excellence Monsieur Le Secrétaire Général Adjoint des Nations Unies,

Excellence Monsieur Le Secrétaire Général de la ligue des États arabes,

Excellence Monsieur Le Vice-Président de l'Autorité Nationale Palestinienne

Excellences Mesdames et Messieurs Les Chefs de délégation,

Excellences Mesdames et Messieurs Les Ministres,

Excellences Messieurs les Chefs Exécutifs des Communautés Économiques Régionales,

Excellences Mesdames et Messieurs Les Ambassadeurs et Représentants des Organisations Internationales,

Honorables Invités,

Mesdames et Messieurs de la Presse,

Mesdames et Messieurs,

1. Je vous souhaite à tous la bienvenue à AddisAbéba, à l'occasion de cette 19^{ème} session ordinaire de la plus haute instance de l'Union africaine. Ces rencontres périodiques constituent des moments forts dans la vie de

notre organisation et comme tels, suscitent toujours un intérêt soutenu tant au niveau du continent qu'en dehors.

2. Je remercie le Gouvernement éthiopien pour toutes les dispositions qu'il a prises en vue d'assurer le succès des présentes assises. Ce faisant, il s'acquitte évidemment des obligations qui sont les siennes en tant que pays hôte, mais reconnaissons qu'il le fait avec une hospitalité et une disponibilité qui rendent toujours agréables nos séjours.
3. Il est maintenant de tradition à chaque session de notre Union que la Conférence accueille en son sein de nouveaux chefs d'État. Permettez-moi à ce titre, de souhaiter la bienvenue au Président Macky Sall qui a accédé au pouvoir en mars dernier à l'issue d'élections exemplaires ainsi qu'au Président Mohamed Morsi d'Égypte, dont l'élection a marqué une étape importante dans le processus de transition en cours en Égypte. Je réitère aussi nos vœux au Premier Ministre Motsoahae Tom Thabane du Lesotho dont l'accession au pouvoir représente une alternance politique pacifique et démocratique qui résulte des élections générales du 25 mai dernier. Naturellement, je réitère aussi mes félicitations à la Présidente Joyce Banda du Malawi et je prie son Vice-Président ici présent, de les lui transmettre.
4. Je salue Son Altesse, Sahib Assoumou al cheikh sabah al ahmed al Jabber Assabah, Émir du Koweït, notre Hôte d'honneur qui a fait le déplacement d'Addis Abéba, désireux qu'il est de donner un nouvel élan au partenariat entre son pays et plus globalement, la Ligue des États arabes d'un côté, et les pays africains et l'UA de l'autre.
5. Je me réjouis de la présence, somme toute naturelle, d'une délégation de Haïti, car ce pays à l'histoire à la fois glorieuse et tragique, bien que situé géographiquement aux Amériques, est aussi un membre de notre grande famille africaine dont nous venons en mai dernier de renforcer encore le rayonnement avec le Sommet de la Diaspora organisé par l'Union en Afrique du Sud.

6. Je salue également le nouveau Secrétaire Général Adjoint des Nations Unies ainsi que le Vice-président de l'Autorité nationale Palestinienne.
7. Notre appréciation va aussi à nos hôtes, nombreux à être présents et dont certains sont venus de loin. Nous sommes sensibles à leurs marques d'amitié et à leur désir de bâtir avec notre continent des partenariats tournés vers l'avenir et mutuellement bénéfiques. En plus des différentes Missions diplomatiques accréditées auprès de l'UA, je relève la présence de responsables gouvernementaux de haut rang venant de l'Allemagne, de l'Australie, du Brésil, du Bhoutan, du Cambodge, de la Chine, de Cuba, de la Finlande, de la Géorgie, de l'Inde, du Koweït, du Luxembourg, du Pakistan, du Portugal, de la Norvège, de la Russie et de la Serbie.
8. Enfin, je ne saurais poursuivre sans renouveler ici, l'expression de toute notre sympathie attristée au Gouvernement et au Peuple nigériens à nouveau douloureusement endeuillés, à la suite de l'accident d'un tanker survenu il y a quelques jours et qui a coûté la vie à plus de 100 personnes.

Monsieur Le Président, Altesse, Excellences, Mesdames et Messieurs,

9. Nos travaux s'ouvrent dans un climat international marqué au plan économique par la persistance de la crise notamment dans la zone euro et du point de vue politique par l'émergence de nouveaux rapports de forces politiques mondiales, un an après les soulèvements populaires notamment en Afrique du Nord. S'agissant de notre continent, le renouveau économique annoncé par la forte résilience post-crise semble s'être confirmé durant la période sous examen, même si la scène politique continentale africaine a été largement dominée et assombrie par les deux coups d'État survenus en Guinée Bissau et au Mali.
10. Il vous souviendra que le thème central de l'année 2012 est *"accroître le commerce, en particulier intra-africain"*. Ce choix a découlé d'une prise de conscience du fait qu'une région dont les États échangent beaucoup plus avec le reste du monde qu'entre eux-mêmes se

prive tout simplement d'un puissant levier pour son développement et l'amélioration du bien-être de ses populations. Les chiffres sont sans appel : le taux du commerce intra-africain s'élève à environ 10%, contre plus de 60% pour l'Europe, par exemple, dont le modèle d'intégration inspire nos efforts. Les présentes assises sont l'occasion non seulement de sensibiliser davantage nos États sur la nécessité et l'urgence d'une action soutenue pour corriger ce qu'il faudrait bien appeler une anomalie, mais aussi d'examiner les mesures prises depuis janvier dernier en application de la déclaration que vous avez adoptée.

11. [Les défis à relever sont énormes, si nous voulons libérer le potentiel de l'Afrique, de façon à ce que ses populations tirent effectivement profit des immenses richesses du continent. Dans leur rapport sur les perspectives économiques de l'Afrique pour l'année 2012, la CEA et l'UA ont formulé nombre de recommandations à cet effet et ont rappelé que l'avenir économique de l'Afrique dépend de l'existence d'un *leadership* politique fort et visionnaire, capable de mobiliser la population autour d'un objectif commun et s'appuyant sur un cadre institutionnel efficace.]

12. Pour sa part, la Commission s'est employée, au cours des six mois écoulés, à faire avancer les différents volets de l'agenda de développement du continent. Une des activités majeures de la Commission a été la tenue de la 5^{ème} session ordinaire de la Conférence des Ministres africains de l'Éducation, dont les recommandations vous sont soumises pour approbation. Qu'il me soit ici permis de mettre en relief les progrès accomplis dans l'opérationnalisation de l'Université panafricaine, avec l'appel à candidatures pour la sélection d'étudiants, dont les premiers commenceront leurs études en septembre 2012. L'intérêt énorme suscité par ce projet à travers tout le continent est tout à la fois une source d'encouragement et un motif de fierté. Il s'agit maintenant de réfléchir aux voies et moyens de sa pérennisation en mobilisant des ressources à cette fin au niveau du continent.

13. Sur le plan des infrastructures, les efforts ont porté sur la mise en œuvre du PIDA que votre session de janvier dernier a adopté. La Commission, en coopération avec ses différents partenaires, œuvre tant au renforcement des capacités des différentes parties prenantes impliquées dans la gestion du Programme qu'à la mobilisation des ressources requises pour l'exécution des projets qui ont été identifiés. La Commission a finalisé nombre d'études de préfaisabilité ou de faisabilité sur des tronçons majeurs des corridors de transport africains. Des efforts sont également entrepris en ce qui concerne le développement de l'énergie géothermale, avec le lancement par la Commission, grâce à l'appui du Gouvernement allemand et de l'Union européenne, d'une initiative visant à encourager l'investissement public et privé dans ce domaine dans la région de l'Afrique de l'Est.
14. Le développement de l'Afrique, est-il besoin de le souligner, dépend aussi du renforcement du volume de ses échanges avec le reste du monde. À cet égard, le transport maritime joue un rôle crucial. Aussi voudrais-je saisir cette occasion pour exhorter les États membres qui ne l'ont pas encore fait à prendre sans délai les dispositions nécessaires, en vue de la signature et de la ratification de la Charte africaine de transport maritime, adoptée par le Sommet de Kampala en juillet 2010.
15. La question du développement agricole a continué de retenir l'attention de la Commission. L'action entreprise s'inscrit dans le cadre du Programme détaillé pour le développement de l'agriculture en Afrique (CAADP). Trente États membres se sont joints à ce Programme, cependant que la Commission assiste la région de la Corne et celle du Sahel à développer des stratégies de résilience face à la sécheresse.

Monsieur Le Président, Altesse, Excellences, Mesdames et Messieurs,

16. Au cours des six mois écoulés, nous nous sommes employés à renforcer les partenariats de l'Afrique avec le reste du monde et à faire

entendre aussi fortement que faire se peut la voix de l'Afrique sur la scène internationale, particulièrement sur la problématique du développement.

17. À cet égard, la Commission a saisi l'occasion des réunions du G8, à Camp David, aux États Unis, en mai 2012, et du G20, à Los Cabos, au Mexique, en juin 2012, pour faire avancer l'agenda de développement de l'UA. Je relèverais en particulier, le lancement à l'occasion de la réunion du G8, de l'Alliance pour la sécurité alimentaire et la nutrition, dont l'objectif est d'accroître les investissements privés nationaux et étrangers dans l'agriculture africaine, d'amener au niveau requis l'innovation de nature à accroître la productivité agricole et de réduire les risques qui pèsent sur les économies et les collectivités vulnérables.
18. La Conférence des Nations unies sur le développement durable, connue sous le nom de Rio+20 et tenue au Brésil en juin dernier, a reçu toute l'attention de l'Afrique. Avant ces assises, la Commission a joué un rôle crucial dans l'élaboration d'une Position africaine commune et a apporté, tout au long des travaux, le soutien technique et logistique nécessaire aux négociateurs africains. En même temps, elle organisait nombre d'événements en marge des discussions pour mettre en relief des questions importantes pour le développement durable de l'Afrique et le financement de la transition du continent vers une économie verte.
19. Des aspects importants de la Position africaine commune ont été pris en compte dans le Document final de Rio+20. Mais beaucoup reste à faire pour la satisfaction des attentes de l'Afrique. Dans l'intervalle, je voudrais réitérer la préoccupation de l'UA face à l'aggravation de l'appauvrissement de la diversité biologique, la désertification et la dégradation des sols, exacerbées par les effets du changement climatique.

Monsieur Le Président, Altesse, Excellences, Mesdames et Messieurs,

20. Les questions de paix et de sécurité continuent d'être au cœur de l'action de l'UA. Il s'agit là d'un domaine où notre Union fait preuve d'un dynamisme reconnu. C'est ainsi que la Commission poursuit le travail de parachèvement de la mise en place intégrale de l'Architecture continentale de paix et de sécurité. À cet égard, une attention soutenue continuera à être accordée au renforcement de la cohérence et de la coordination entre le niveau régional et le niveau continental, conformément au Protocole portant création du Conseil de paix et de sécurité.
21. Dans le cadre de la prévention structurelle des conflits, la Commission a poursuivi la mise en œuvre du Programme frontière de l'UA. Point n'est besoin de souligner l'importance de ce Programme, particulièrement au regard du fait que les frontières africaines ont été une source récurrente de différends et de conflits, compte tenu des conditions qui ont présidé à leur tracé. L'élément majeur de la période sous examen a été la tenue, à Niamey, de la 3^{ème} Conférence des Ministres africains chargés des questions de frontières. Je remercie le Président Mahamadou Issoufou et son Gouvernement pour toute l'assistance apportée en vue du bon déroulement de cette Conférence.
22. Des progrès importants ont été accomplis dans le traitement des conflits qui déchirent le continent africain. La Somalie est certainement l'exemple le plus éloquent de ce que l'Afrique avec le soutien du reste du monde, peut réaliser lorsque la volonté politique et la détermination requise existent pour changer le cours des événements. Jamais, au cours des deux décennies de guerre et de violence qui ont affligé la Somalie, les perspectives de paix n'ont paru aussi encourageantes que maintenant. Je salue le courage des soldats de l'AMISOM et celui de leurs frères somaliens. Je rends aussi hommage à l'Ouganda, au Burundi, au Kenya, à Djibouti qui sont les États contributeurs de troupes ainsi qu'à l'Éthiopie. Enfin, nous encourageons les dirigeants somaliens à poursuivre sans relâche leurs efforts pour mener à terme, la transition en cours. L'Afrique demeurera toujours solidaire du peuple somalien dans sa quête de paix, de sécurité et de réconciliation et l'accompagnera à toutes les étapes.

23. Les transitions démocratiques en Égypte, en Libye et en Tunisie sont en bonne voie. L'élection présidentielle en Égypte et le scrutin pour choisir une Assemblée constituante en Libye constituent des jalons très importants dans la marche de ces deux pays vers la mise en place d'institutions démocratiques pluralistes. Ceci mérite nos encouragements. Le succès exemplaire des élections législatives algériennes qui se sont déroulées en mai dernier, est aussi à porter au crédit du renforcement du processus démocratique engagé en Afrique.
24. Je suis encouragé par les avancées enregistrées sur la voie de la consolidation de la paix au Libéria, en Côte d'Ivoire, où le processus de normalisation institutionnelle a été parachevé, ainsi qu'aux Comores. Je me réjouis de la concertation engagée par le Président François Bozizé avec la classe politique centrafricaine. Je note enfin avec satisfaction l'évolution encourageante en cours dans la région du Darfour, au Soudan. J'appelle la communauté internationale à soutenir fortement ces entreprises de consolidation de la paix et de reconstruction post-conflit, tant il est vrai que tout relâchement de l'effort international peut remettre en cause les gains arrachés de haute lutte par ces différents pays. Pour sa part, la Commission a lancé, en marge de la session du Conseil exécutif, l'Initiative de solidarité africaine, qui vise à mobiliser, au niveau du continent, un appui accru pour les pays africains émergeant de conflits.
25. Je me dois aussi de saluer les efforts de la SADC à Madagascar, où des difficultés restent encore à surmonter en vue de la mise en œuvre de la feuille de route.
26. Il reste que le continent continue de faire face à de graves défis dans le domaine de la paix et de la sécurité. Outre l'impasse persistante dans certaines situations – Éthiopie/Érythrée, Djibouti/Érythrée et Sahara Occidental –, et les difficultés rencontrées dans la mise en œuvre d'accords de paix, la période sous examen a été marquée par l'éclatement de nouvelles crises. Si ces dernières ne remettent pas en cause la tendance générale à la diminution des conflits observée sur le

continent depuis deux décennies, elles n'en constituent pas moins de sérieux motifs de préoccupation, qui, comme tels, interpellent les institutions compétentes et les dirigeants du continent.

27. Les relations entre le Soudan et le Soudan du Sud ont connu une grave détérioration. L'UA, à travers le Conseil de paix et de sécurité et le Groupe de mise en œuvre de haut niveau sont au-devant de l'action internationale visant à contenir cette crise et à aider les deux pays à promouvoir un bon voisinage entre eux et à construire un partenariat mutuellement bénéfique. Si nombre d'éléments de la Feuille de route de l'UA restent encore à mettre en œuvre, il importe toutefois de noter avec satisfaction la fin des affrontements armés et les avancées enregistrées sur certains points. Je me réjouis de l'engagement récemment exprimé par les deux Parties à négocier comme partenaires pour régler toutes les questions en suspens dans le délai fixé par l'UA et les Nations unies, sur la base du principe convenu de l'émergence de deux États viables.

28. Les coups d'État qui ont eu lieu en Guinée Bissau et au Mali sont venus nous rappeler que, malgré nos instruments et nos efforts, cette modalité inconstitutionnelle de prise de pouvoir ne semble pas résolue pour certains.

29. La situation au Mali et ses répercussions régionales constituent, à n'en pas douter, une des plus graves menaces qui pèse sur la sécurité et la stabilité du continent. Le Conseil de paix et de sécurité et la Commission ont déployé des efforts soutenus pour aider au règlement de cette crise. Hier même, se tenait ici à AddisAbéba, une réunion du Conseil au niveau des chefs d'État et de Gouvernement consacrée à cette situation. L'UA continuera de travailler étroitement avec la CEDEAO et les Pays du champ, ainsi qu'avec les partenaires internationaux, pour accélérer le règlement de cette crise. Il s'agit de consolider le processus de retour à l'ordre constitutionnel et d'œuvrer à la mise en place rapide d'un Gouvernement véritablement représentatif, ainsi que l'a demandé la réunion du Groupe de contact de la CEDEAO, tenue à Ouagadougou, il y a quelques jours. Il s'agit aussi de restaurer au plus vite l'autorité de l'État

sur la partie Nord du pays, actuellement livrée aux exactions et aux trafics en tout genre des groupes armés, terroristes et criminels. Je voudrais ici réitérer la pertinence continue des décisions du Conseil de paix et de sécurité sur la nécessaire mutualisation des efforts et la coordination des initiatives dans la recherche d'un règlement à la crise au Mali.

30. L'occasion ici m'est donnée de lancer un appel concernant ce qui se passe actuellement au Nord de ce pays frère, avec la destruction systématique et organisée de ce qui appartient non seulement aux Maliens mais représente aussi le patrimoine inestimable de l'Afrique et de l'Humanité. Lorsque des trésors comme Tombouctou sont saccagés et détruits, ce sont des témoignages concrets du lien interdépendant et nécessaire entre le passé, le présent et l'avenir qui disparaissent, alors qu'ils étaient là pour nous rappeler que les progrès actuels sont fondés sur les efforts et les sacrifices consentis dans le passé et que notre future prospérité sera bâtie sur les efforts et les sacrifices que nous fournissons aujourd'hui.

Monsieur Le Président, Altesse, Excellences, Mesdames et Messieurs,

31. Des efforts soutenus sont requis pour régler le conflit qui déchire l'Est de la République démocratique du Congo. L'action du Gouvernement congolais vise à restaurer l'autorité de l'État et mettre fin aux rébellions armées. Point n'est besoin de souligner le rôle crucial des pays de la région, à travers les mécanismes qu'ils ont mis en place, en vue de la restauration définitive de la paix dans cette partie du territoire congolais et de la promotion de la confiance entre tous les acteurs concernés. L'UA est disposée à contribuer à la constitution d'une force régionale pour mettre un terme définitif aux activités des groupes armés.
32. Les crises au Mali et en RDC ont mis en relief la gravité de certaines des menaces qui pèsent sur la paix, la sécurité et la stabilité en Afrique. La première a trait au recours à la rébellion armée pour faire aboutir des revendications politiques, alors même que les mécanismes

institutionnels existants, si imparfaits soient-ils, offrent des cadres d'expression permettant de faire valoir les préoccupations qui peuvent être celles de catégories et groupes donnés. Ainsi que l'a souligné le Conseil de paix et de sécurité, le recours à la rébellion armée fait peser une grave menace sur les processus de démocratisation, ainsi que sur la stabilité et le développement de l'Afrique.

33. Cette situation prend une dimension encore plus préoccupante lorsqu'elle se double de revendications sécessionnistes. En effet, le respect de l'unité et de l'intégrité territoriale des États membres de l'UA figure au 1^{er} rang des principes les plus fondamentaux de l'Afrique, comme en témoigne l'adoption, dès juillet 1964, d'une déclaration sur le respect de l'intangibilité des frontières existant au moment de l'accession des pays africains à l'indépendance.
34. Il importe que la présente session de la Conférence réaffirme avec force le rejet du recours à la rébellion armée, ainsi que l'engagement des États membres à continuer à œuvrer à l'approfondissement des processus démocratiques. Tout aussi important est la nécessité pour l'UA de continuer à veiller à la préservation de l'unité nationale et de l'intégrité territoriale de tous ses États membres, ainsi qu'à la poursuite de l'entreprise d'intégration du continent. Les principes qui sont ici en cause sont d'un intérêt vital pour l'ensemble de l'Afrique. Leur défense est dès lors une responsabilité continentale, pour laquelle la contribution de chaque État membre est requise.
35. Enfin, nous ne saurions occulter un phénomène qui depuis quelque temps tend à devenir un des problèmes majeurs du continent et que certains n'hésitent plus à qualifier de jihadisme africain, articulé autour de trois pôles : Aqmi qui sévit en majeure partie en Algérie, au Niger, au Mali et en Mauritanie à travers l'immense espace Sahara-Sahel, Boko Haram qui mène au Nigéria le jihad contre les forces armées du pays et enfin les Shebab en Somalie mais qui étendent leur capacité de nuisance à des pays tels que l'Ouganda et le Kenya. Des efforts sont déployés au niveau régional et continental pour enrayer ce phénomène.

36. Et c'est ici l'occasion pour moi de saluer l'initiative d'Alger de réunir au niveau des Ministres des Affaires Étrangères en début de cette semaine, les pays de l'Union du Maghreb arabe (UMA) en vue de discuter d'une approche commune pour résoudre les menaces sécuritaires croissantes auxquelles est aussi confrontée la région du Maghreb: extrémisme, terrorisme, crime organisé, blanchiment d'argent, trafic de stupéfiants, trafic humain et trafic d'armes.

Monsieur Le Président, Altesse, Excellences, Mesdames et Messieurs,

37. Ce mois marque le 10^{ème} anniversaire de la création de notre Union, cependant que l'année 2013 marquera le 50^{ème} anniversaire de la création de l'Organisation de l'unité africaine, ici même à AddisAbéba. Incontestablement, un long chemin a été parcouru depuis. Nous avons beaucoup de motifs de fierté. J'en vois notamment, une expression éloquente dans le destin unique de notre icône vivante qu'est Madiba dont la 94^{ème} bougie dans quelques jours, éclairera la trajectoire de l'Afrique avec la célébration des valeurs référentielles qu'immortalisent sa vie et son œuvre.

38. Dans le même temps, beaucoup reste à faire pour traduire dans les faits le rêve des Pères Fondateurs et répondre aux espoirs qu'a soulevés la création de notre Union. L'Afrique dispose de nombreux atouts : une jeunesse dynamique et talentueuse, capable d'innovations ; une population nombreuse constituant l'un des plus grands marchés du monde ; des richesses naturelles, dont l'immensité est chaque jour confirmée par de nouvelles découvertes ; un sentiment panafricain largement partagé, un environnement macro-économique global amélioré ; des réformes institutionnelles stratégiques opportunes ; une gouvernance et un climat des affaires en net et constant progrès dans la plupart de nos pays avec par-dessus tout un environnement sécuritaire en progression constante, sans oublier les prix élevés des matières premières.

39. Libérer ce potentiel et transformer la face du continent requièrent la confiance en nous-mêmes et en notre capacité à surmonter les défis auxquels notre continent est confronté. En effet, les solutions aux problèmes de l'Afrique se trouvent sur le continent et nulle part ailleurs. Le *leadership* du continent et son appropriation de toutes les initiatives qui concernent l'Afrique revêtent une importance cruciale. Cela exige aussi le renforcement de l'unité du continent et de la solidarité africaine. Nous devons nécessairement resserrer nos rangs si nous voulons donner corps à la vision qui a sous-tendu la création de l'UA. Notre démarche et notre action dans les années à venir doivent se nourrir de ces convictions. L'Afrique, nos peuples, n'attendent pas moins de nous.

1. VIVE L'AFRIQUE, JE VOUS REMERCIE, THANK YOU VERY MUCH, CHOUKRAN JAZZILEN, MULTO OBLIGADO, MUCHAS GRACIAS, ASANTE SANA.

Appendix K: Statement of the Chairperson of the Commission, Dr Jean Ping (English TT)

STATEMENT OF THE CHAIRPERSON OF THE COMMISSION,
DR. JEAN PING, AT THE OPENING CEREMONY OF THE 19TH ORDINARY
SESSION OF THE ASSEMBLY OF THE AFRICAN UNION

ADDIS ABABA, 15 JULY 2012

Mr. Thomas BoniYayi, President of the Republic of Benin, Chairman of the African Union,

Your Royal Highness, Sheikh Sabah Al-Ahmed Al-Jaber Al-Sabah, Emir of Kuwait, Guest of Honour of this Assembly,

Excellencies Heads of State and Government,

First Ladies,

Mr. Deputy Secretary General of the United Nations,

Mr. Secretary General of the League of Arab States,

Mr. President of the National Authority of Palestine, and Chairman of the Executive Committee of the Palestine Liberation Organisation,

Distinguished Heads of Delegation,

Honourable Ministers,

Chief Executives of the Regional Economic Communities,

Distinguished Ambassadors and Representatives of International Organisation,

Invited Guests,

Members of the Press,

Ladies and Gentlemen,

1. I welcome you all to Addis Ababa on the occasion of the 19th Ordinary Session of the highest body of the African Union. These regular meetings constitute strong moments in the life of our Organisation and as such always raise sustained interest inside and outside the continent.

2. I thank the Ethiopian Government for all arrangements it made to ensure the success of the present meeting. In so doing, it obviously fulfills its obligations as host country, but we should also recognise that they do it with a touch of hospitality and preparedness which make our stay always pleasant.

3. It is now a tradition at each session of our Union that the Assembly welcomes in its midst new Heads of State. May I, on that score, welcome President MackySall, who came to power in March as a result of exemplary elections as well as President Mohamed Morsi of Egypt, whose election marked an important stage in the process of transition underway in Egypt. I reiterate also our wishes to Prime Minister Motsoahae Tom Thabane of Lesotho whose appointment represents a peaceful and democratic alternation resulting from the general elections of 25 March 2012.

4. I hail His Royal Highness Sheikh Sabah Al-Ahmed Al-Jaber Al-Sabah, Emir of

Kuwait, our Guest of Honour who travelled to Addis Ababa, with the desire to give a new momentum to the partnership between his country and more generally, the League of Arab States on the one hand and the African countries and the AU on the other.

5. I am also delighted by the presence, most naturally, of a delegation from Haiti, for this country, with a glorious and tragic history, although located geographically in the Americas is also a member of our great African family whose influence further enhanced in May 2012 with the Summit on the Diaspora organized by the Union in South Africa.

6. I also welcome the new Deputy Secretary General of the United Nations as well as the President of the Palestine National Authority.

7. I express our appreciation to our many guests, some of whom have come from far. We are moved by their mark of friendship and their desire to build with our Continent partnerships geared towards the future and mutually beneficial. In addition to the different diplomatic missions accredited to the AU, I note the presence of high ranking government officials from Germany, Australia, Brazil, Bhutan, Cambodia, China, Cuba, Finland, Georgia, India, Kuwait, Luxembourg, Pakistan, Portugal, Norway, Russia and Serbia.

8. Finally, I cannot continue without reiterating here the expression of heartfelt sympathy to the Government and the people of Nigeria once again painfully bereaved after the accident of a tanker that happened a few days ago which cost the life of more than 100 persons.

Mr. Chairman, Your Highness, Excellencies, Ladies and Gentlemen,

9. Your meeting is opening in an international climate marked, at the economic level, by the persistence of the crisis in the Euro zone and from the political viewpoint the emergence of new global political powerrelations, a year after the popular uprisings, particularly in North Africa. With regard to our Continent, the economic recovery announced by the strong resilience after the crisis seems to be confirmed during the period under consideration, even if the African political scene has been greatly dominated and tarnished by two coups d'état that took place in Guinea Bissau and Mali.

10. You will recall that the main theme for 2012 is **"Boost Trade, particularly Intra-African trade"**. This choice emanated from the awareness of the fact that one region, whose states trade more with the rest of the world than between themselves simply deprives itself of a powerful lever for its development and the improvement of the well-being of its peoples. The figures speak for themselves: the volume of Intra African trade amounts to 10% as against more than 60% for Europe, for example, whose model of integration inspires our efforts. The present meeting is an opportunity not only to sensitize further our States about the need and urgency for a sustained action to correct what must be called an anomaly but also to consider the measures taken since January

2012 pursuant to the Declaration you adopted.

11. The challenges to be taken up are enormous, if we want to unleash the potential of Africa so that its peoples effectively benefit from the immense wealth of the Continent. In their Reports on the economic prospects of Africa for 2012, the ECA and the AU made a number of recommendations to this end and have recalled that the economic future of Africa depends on the existence of a strong and visionary political leadership, capable of mobilising the people around a common objective and based on an effective institutional framework.

12. On its part, the Commission endeavoured, during the past six months, to move forward the different aspects of the development agenda of the Continent. One of the major activities of the Commission was the convening of the 5th Ordinary Session of the Conference of African Ministers of Education, whose recommendations have been submitted to you for approval. May I highlight the progress made in the operationalisation of the PanAfrican University, with calls for applications for the selection of students, the first of whom will start their studies in September 2012. The great interest roused by this initiative throughout the Continent is both a source of encouragement and a cause for pride. We need now to think about the ways and means to sustain this initiative by mobilising resources at the Continental level for this purpose.

13. At the level of infrastructures, efforts were concentrated on the implementation of the PIDA which your January session had adopted. The Commission, in cooperation with its different partners, endeavours to build capacities of different stakeholders involved in the management of the Programme and the mobilisation of necessary resources for the execution of identified projects. The Commission has finalised a number of prefeasibility or feasibility studies on the major sections of the African transport corridors. Efforts are also made concerning the development of geothermal energy with the launching by the Commission, thanks to the support of the German Government and the European Union, of an initiative aimed at encouraging public and private investment in this field in the East Africa region.

14. It is not necessary to stress that the development of Africa depends also on the increase in the volume of trade with the rest of the world. In this regard, maritime transport plays a major role. Consequently, I wish to seize this opportunity to urge the Member States, which have not yet done so, to take, without delay, the necessary measures to sign and ratify the African Charter on Maritime Transport, adopted by the Kampala Summit in July 2010.

15. The issue of agricultural development continued to engage the attention of the Commission. The action taken falls within the framework of the Comprehensive Africa Agriculture Development Programme (CAADP). Thirty Member States have joined this Programme while the Commission is helping the Horn of Africa and the Sahel regions to work out strategies for drought resistance.

Mr. Chairman, Your Highness, Excellencies, Ladies and Gentlemen,

16. During the past six months, we endeavoured to enhance the partnerships of Africa with the rest of the world and have its voice heard as loudly as possible on the international scene, particularly on the problem of development.

17. In this regard, the Commission seized the opportunity of the meetings of G8 in Camp David, United States in May 2012 and G20 in Los Cabos, Mexico, in June 2012, to move forward the development agenda of the AU. I would like to point out, particularly, the launching, on the occasion of the G8 meeting, of the Alliance for Food Security and Nutrition, whose objective is to increase national and foreign private investments in African agriculture, raise to the required level innovation likely to increase agricultural productivity and reduce the risks to economies and vulnerable communities.

18. The UN Conference on Sustainable Development, known as "Rio+20", held in Brazil, in June 2012 also received all the attention of Africa. Before that meeting, the Commission played a crucial role in the preparation of the African Common Position and throughout the meeting, the Commission gave, to the African negotiators, the necessary technical and logistics support. At the same time it organised many events concurrently with the discussions to highlight the important issues for the sustainable development of Africa and the financing of the transition of the Continent towards a green economy.

19. Important elements of the African Common Position were taken into account in the Final document of Rio+20. But much still remains to be done to meet the expectations of Africa. In the meantime, I wish to reiterate the concern of the AU in the face of the deterioration of the impoverishment of biological diversity, desertification and soil degradation exacerbated by the effects of climate change.

Mr. Chairman, Your Highness, Excellencies, Ladies and Gentlemen,

20. The issues of peace and security continue to be at the heart of the action of the AU. This is an area in which our Union shows recognised dynamism. Thus the Commission pursues the conclusion of the full establishment of the African Peace and Security Architecture. In this regard, sustained attention will be continuously given to the enhancement of the coherence and coordination between the regional and continental levels, in conformity with the Protocol establishing the Peace and Security Council.

21. Within the framework of the structural prevention of conflicts, the Commission pursued the implementation of the AU Border Programme. The importance of this Programme needs not to be overemphasised, particularly considering the fact that African borders have been a recurrent source of disputes and conflicts because of the conditions that presided over the drawing of the borders. The major element of the period under consideration has been the convening in Niamey of the 3rd Conference of African Ministers in charge of Border Issues. I thank President Mahamadoulssoufou

and his Government for all assistance given for the smooth proceedings of the Conference.

22. Significant progress has been made in dealing with the conflicts affecting the African Continent. Somalia is certainly the most eloquent example of what Africa, with the support of the rest of the world, can achieve when the necessary political will and determination exist to change the course of events. Never, during two decades of war and violence which afflicted Somalia, the prospects of peace appeared as encouraging as now. I commend the courage of the AMISOM soldiers and that of their Somali brothers. I also pay tribute to Uganda, Burundi, Kenya, Djibouti, which are the troop contributing countries as well as to Ethiopia. Finally, we encourage the Somali leaders to continue relentlessly their efforts to carry out successfully the ongoing transition. Africa will always show solidarity with the people of Somalia in their quest for peace, security and reconciliation and will support them at all stages.

23. The democratic transition in Egypt, Libya, and Tunisia is in the right direction. The Presidential election in Egypt and the ballot to choose a Constituent Assembly in Libya have been very important milestones in the march of these two countries towards the establishment of democratic and responsible institutions. This deserves our encouragement. The exemplary success of the Algerian legislative elections organized in May 2012 is also to the credit of the strengthening of the democratic process initiated in Africa.

24. I am encouraged by the progress made on the path to peace building in Liberia, Cote d'Ivoire as well as in The Comoros, where the process of institutional normalisation has been completed. I am delighted with the consultation held by President Francois Bozize with the Central African political class. I finally note with satisfaction the ongoing encouraging evolution in the Darfur region, in The Sudan. I call upon the international community to strongly support these actions of peace building and post conflict reconstruction though it is true that any relaxation of the international efforts may compromise the achievements made after long struggle by these different countries. On its part the Commission launched, on the margins of the session of the Executive Council, the Africa Solidarity Initiative which aims at mobilising, at the Continent level, increased support for all African countries emerging from conflicts.

25. I must commend the efforts of SADC in Madagascar where there still difficulties to be overcome for the implementation of the roadmap.

26. Yet the Continent continues to face serious challenges in the field of peace and security. In addition to the persistent impasse in some situations – Ethiopia/ Eritrea, Djibouti/Eritrea and Western Sahara – and the difficulties met in the implementation of peace agreements, the period under consideration was marked by the outbreak of new crises. If the latter do not call into question the general trend of reduction of conflicts observed on the Continent since two decades, they nevertheless constitute no less serious motives for concern which, as such, challenge the appropriate institutions and

leaders of the Continent.

27. The relations between The Sudan and South Sudan deteriorated seriously. The AU, through the Peace and Security Council and the High Level Implementation Panel are in the forefront of international action aimed at containing the crisis and help the two countries to promote good neighbourliness between them and build a mutually beneficial partnership. If many elements of the AU Roadmap are still to be implemented, it is, however, important to note, with satisfaction, the end of armed clashes and the progress made on some points. I welcome the commitment made recently by the two parties to negotiate as partners to resolve all outstanding issues within the deadline fixed by the AU and the United Nations, on the basis of the agreed principle of the emergence of two viable States.

28. The coups d'état that took place in Guinea Bissau and Mali reminded us that despite our instruments and efforts this unconstitutional method of seizing power does not seem to be of the past for some.

29. The situation in Mali and its regional repercussions constitute, undoubtedly, one of the most serious threats to the security and stability of the Continent. The Peace and Security Council and the Commission made sustained efforts to help resolve this crisis. Yesterday, in Addis Ababa, there was a meeting of the Council, at Heads of State and Government level, devoted to this situation. The AU will continue to work closely with ECOWAS and the core countries as well as with the international partners to speed up the resolution of this crisis. It is to consolidate the process of restoration of constitutional order and work for the speedy establishment of a genuinely representative Government as rightly requested by the meeting of the ECOWAS Contact Group, held in Ouagadougou a few days ago. It is also to restore, as quickly as possible, the authority of the State in the North of the country, at present in the snare of exactions and all types of trafficking by the armed, terrorist and criminal groups. I would like to reiterate here the continued relevance of the decisions of the Peace and Security Council on the necessary pooling of efforts and coordination of initiatives in the search for a solution to the crisis in Mali.

30. I have this opportunity to make an appeal about what is happening at present in the north of this brotherly country, with the systematic and organised destruction of what belongs not only to the Malians but also represents the invaluable heritage of Africa and Mankind. When treasures like Tumbuktu are ravaged and destroyed these are the concrete proofs of interdependent and necessary links between the past, the present and the future which disappear while they were there to remind us that the present progress is based on the efforts and sacrifices made in the past and that our future prosperity will be built on the efforts and sacrifices we make today.

Mr. Chairman, Your Highness, Excellencies, Ladies and Gentlemen,

31. Sustained efforts are required to resolve the conflict which is tearing the East of the Democratic Republic of the Congo apart. The action of the Congolese Government

aims at restoring the authority of the State and put an end to the armed rebellion. There is no need to stress the crucial role of the countries of the region, through the mechanisms they put in place to restore definitively peace in this part of the Congolese territory and promote trust between all the actors concerned. The AU is ready to contribute to the establishment of a regional force to put a definitive end to the activities of the armed groups.

32. The crises in Mali and the DRC have highlighted the seriousness of some of the threats against peace, security and stability in Africa. The first one relates to the use of armed rebellion to drive home political claims while the existing institutional mechanisms, though imperfect, provide frameworks of expression making it possible to voice out concerns which may be those of given categories and groups. As stressed by the Peace and Security Council, recourse to armed rebellion poses a serious threat to the democratisation process and the stability and development of Africa.

33. This situation assumes a more alarming turn when it is compounded by secessionist claims. As a matter of fact, the respect for the unity and territorial integrity of AU Member States are among the most fundamental principles of Africa as evidenced by the adoption, as of July 1964, of a Declaration on the respect for the inviolability of borders existing at the time of accession to independence by African countries.

34. It is important that this session of the Assembly reaffirm with force the rejection of recourse to armed rebellion as well as the commitment of the Member States to continue to work for the deepening of the democratic process. It is also important for the AU to continue to ensure the preservation of the national unity and territorial integrity of all its Member States as well as the continuation of the integration of the Continent. The principles in question here are of vital interest to the whole of Africa. Their defence is, therefore, a continental responsibility for which the contribution of each State is required.

35. Finally, we cannot hide a phenomenon which for some time now tends to become one of the major problems of the Continent and which some do not hesitate to call African Jihadism, revolving around three poles: AQMI which rages mainly in Algeria, Niger, Mali and Mauritania across the vast Sahara-Sahel space, Boko Haram which is waging Jihad in Nigeria against the armed forces of the country and finally the Al-Shabab in Somalia but which spreads its capacity to harm to countries like Uganda and Kenya. Efforts are made at the Regional and Continental levels to eradicate this phenomenon.

36. It is for me an opportunity here to commend the initiative of Algiers to have brought together, in the beginning of this week, the Ministers of Foreign Affairs of the countries of the Arab Maghreb Union (AMU) to discuss a joint approach to resolve the growing security threats faced also by the Maghreb region: extremism, terrorism, organized crime, money laundering, drug, human and arms trafficking.

Mr. Chairman, Your Highness, Excellencies, Ladies and Gentlemen,

37. This month marks the 10th anniversary of the establishment of our Union, while 2013 will mark the 50th anniversary of the establishment of the Organisation of African Unity, here in Addis Ababa. Indisputably, since then we have come a long way. We have many reasons to feel proud. I see particularly an eloquent expression in the unique destiny of our living icon who is Madiba whose candle for his 94th birthday in a few days will light the path of Africa with the celebration of referential values which his life and work immortalise.

38. At the same time, there is still much to be done to translate into deed the dream of our Founding Fathers and fulfill the hope raised by the establishment of our Union. Africa has many assets: dynamic and talented youths capable of innovations; huge population constituting one of the biggest markets of the world; natural wealth whose huge size is confirmed everyday by new discoveries; a PanAfrican feeling largely shared; an improved global macro-economic environment; opportune strategic institutional reforms; governance and business climate in constant progression in most of our countries with above all a security environment continuously improving without forgetting the high prices of raw materials.

39. To unleash this potential and change the face of the Continent requires trust in ourselves and our capacity to overcome the challenges faced by our Continent. Indeed, the solutions to the problems of Africa are on the Continent and not anywhere else. The leadership of the Continent and ownership of all the initiatives concerning Africa are of crucial importance. This also demands the strengthening of the unity of the Continent and African solidarity. We must necessarily close our rank if we want to give concrete form to the vision which subtended the establishment of the AU. Our approach and action in the coming years should be nurtured on these two convictions. Africa, our peoples, expect nothing less from us.

40. LONG LIVE AFRICA. I THANK YOU VERY MUCH. SHUKRAN JAZEELAN, MUITO OBRIGADO, MUCHAS GRACIAS, ASANTE SANA.

Appendix L: Lettre du Président (French ST- English TT at Appendix M)



Lettre du Président

Numéro 2. Décembre 2011

Jean Ping,
Président de la
Commission de l'Union africaine

Transformer la Commission en moteur de la Renaissance de l'Afrique

Lettre du Président

Souvent, le changement n'est pas un choix. C'est une question de survie; parce que les circonstances ont changé et ou parce que nos propres demandes ont évolué, nous avons parfois besoin de changer notre façon de faire les choses.

Quand mes collègues et moi avons pris nos fonctions en avril 2008, nous savions que nous n'avions pas d'autre choix que de nous engager dans un programme de réforme ambitieux et partant difficile. La Commission avait besoin d'une profonde transformation afin de mieux remplir son rôle de mécanisme principal de conception, de mise en œuvre et de coordination des programmes et des décisions de l'Union au profit du peuple africain. Tel était le mandat qui nous a été assigné par l'Assemblée et le Conseil exécutif. Sur la base du rapport du Panel de Haut niveau d'Audit de l'Union Africaine, nos priorités ont été clairement identifiées et nous avons eu agir en faisant face à de nombreux défis systémiques.

D'abord et avant tout, notre priorité immédiate a été d'accélérer et de compléter la transformation du Secrétariat de l'Organisation de l'Unité Africaine (OUA) en Commission de l'Union Africaine (AUC). Une fois les aspirations légitimes du peuple africain à la libération accomplies, les États africains décolonisés, et le régime abject de l'apartheid aboli, les Chefs d'État et de Gouvernement de l'Union africaine ont engagé la nouvelle organisation à être le fer de lance de l'agenda de développement et d'intégration du continent, tout en assurant la paix et la sécurité pour ses habitants.

Deuxièmement, en tant qu'organe exécutif de l'Union, la Commission a été chargée de mettre en place les systèmes et les structures de nature à augmenter la synergie entre les États membres, les organes de l'AU et les autres organisations panafricaines, sur la base des principes de subsidiarité, de complémentarité et de l'avantage comparatif. Troisièmement, la tâche majeure de la Commission a consisté à assurer une mobilisation durable des ressources pour le bon fonctionnement de l'institution.

Ces objectifs ont été clairement énoncés dans le Plan Stratégique de l'UA 2009-2012 sous le Programme de renforcement institutionnel des capacités, se déclinant en 4 axes majeurs:

1. Renforcer les capacités et améliorer l'efficacité opérationnelle de la Commission de l'Union Africaine;
2. Favoriser les synergies, les liens et les bonnes relations de travail avec tous les organes de l'UA;
3. Promouvoir l'efficacité des relations de coopération et de collaboration avec les États membres et les Communautés Economiques Régionales;
4. Instaurer des partenariats stratégiques pour tirer parti des sources de financement durables et des avantages comparatifs.

Après trois ans et demi de chemin parcouru, je ne doute pas, en tant que responsable de la Commission, que nous avons fait des progrès substantiels et tangibles dans tous les domaines. D'importantes initiatives ont été prises qui contribuent à la création d'une institution correspondant aux vœux des Chefs d'État et de Gouvernement. Il est nécessaire pour chaque athlète d'échauffer ses muscles avant de s'engager dans la compétition. Pour ceux qui prennent soin de regarder au-delà de la tourmente et de la complexité de cet immense chantier, le cadre d'une solide CUA peut déjà être aperçu, une CUA plus crédible, plus fiable, plus capable de s'acquitter de son rôle de moteur de la Renaissance africaine.

Pour accomplir notre mission, nous avons concentré nos efforts sur le renforcement des systèmes essentiels et sur les méthodes de la Commission:



I. Prodiguier les directives

En 2009 et pour la première fois, le Plan stratégique de l'Union africaine a été conçu en tant que Plan axé sur les résultats et fondé sur les programmes. Cette entreprise unique a constitué un changement majeur dans la façon dont la Commission exerce ses activités. En adoptant ces principes, la Commission a ouvert la voie à une interaction accrue entre les départements, a réduit les chevauchements entre les activités, et a amélioré la focalisation et la pertinence du travail de terrain, tout en accélérant l'intégration du NEPAD dans les structures de l'UA et ses processus.

Nous avons insisté sur les réunions hebdomadaires de la Commission, avec la présence du président, du vice-président, des commissaires et des hauts fonctionnaires, où chaque mardi, ils échangent les informations au plus haut niveau de gestion et accroissent la coordination interdépartementale. Le suivi des programmes transversaux et des projets est réalisé par le biais de réunions régulières des directeurs.

Dans le même perspective, nous avons accordé une priorité à l'information et à l'implication des États membres et du Comité des Représentants Permanents à propos de nos programmes et nos projets de façon cohérente, étant convaincu que seule une approche intégrative systémique nous permettra d'atteindre les objectifs ambitieux et combien nécessaires, de l'UA.

II. Créer les instruments

En vue d'aider les départements à adopter cette approche, la Direction de la Planification Stratégique, du Suivi des politiques, d'Evaluation et de la Mobilisation des Ressources (SPPMERM) a été renforcée et des formations ont été dispensées aux cadres supérieurs, planificateurs et gestionnaires de programmes, dans le domaine de la rationalisation du travail. Le cycle de la programmation budgétaire et l'échéancier ont été révisés afin que le financement soit reçu à l'avance, au début de l'exercice financier, et que la mise en œuvre puisse s'effectuer à temps, au lieu qu'elle commence avec 3 à 6 mois de retard, comme c'est le cas actuellement, pour cause de non disponibilité des fonds.

Conformément à la réglementation et aux directives financières de l'UA, la Commission, comme nous l'avons soutenu, adoptera, à partir du prochain exercice budgétaire, la planification pluriannuelle et encouragera la mise en place d'un cadre de dépenses à moyen terme, ce qui permettra de réaliser des améliorations substantielles, tels la réduction des délais de préparation du budget, le perfectionnement de la planification stratégique et à long terme, la conception de projets pluriannuels, la garantie d'un processus budgétaire axé sur les politiques, la consolidation du management de la performance et la réduction des frais liés à la préparation du budget.

Nous avons d'ores et déjà commencé à concevoir le cadre de suivi et d'évaluation qui permettra aux gestionnaires des plans et des projets et à leur personnel d'évaluer les résultats de leur action sur le terrain, de manière à mesurer leur rendement et à obtenir les informations nécessaires pour corriger, le cas échéant, leurs méthodes de travail dans le but d'atteindre les objectifs fixés.

III. Garantir les ressources

Pour faire face aux coûts financiers élevés, inhérents à la sécurité de l'Afrique, au développement, à la gouvernance et au programme d'intégration, il s'avère impératif de mobiliser des ressources supplémentaires, à l'appui des contributions des États membres. Nous avons œuvré à obtenir un financement adéquat et probable pour réaliser nos actions. Nous n'avons pas encore atteint cet objectif. Cependant, un groupe de haut niveau sur les sources alternatives de financement de l'Union africaine a été mis en place sous la direction de S.E. Olusegun Obasanjo, ancien président du Nigéria. Le panel a entrepris des consultations au cours de l'année. Il soumettra son rapport, sous peu.

Dans le même esprit de générer de nouvelles sources de financement, des accords conjoints de programmation ont été négociés et signés avec nos partenaires, pour financer trois programmes : Paix et sécurité, Valeurs partagées et Renforcement institutionnel des capacités. Ces arrangements permettront d'améliorer le niveau des prévisions, la transparence des opérations de financement et d'alléger le coût d'établissement des rapports et des opérations d'audit. Ils sont conformes avec la Déclaration de Paris sur l'efficacité de l'aide et avec l'agenda d'Accra pour l'Action.

IV. Regagner la confiance

Le plus grand défi auquel la Commission a fait face, est lié aux retards et lacunes reflétés dans les rapports financiers relatifs à la période 2003 à 2008, spécialement ceux concernant les budgets programmes financés par les partenaires. A titre d'exemple, 300 millions de dollars Américains avaient été dépensés lors de la Mission de l'Union Africaine au Soudan (AMIS), entre 2003 et 2008, sans avoir été entièrement et correctement inscrits dans des rapports comptables. La Commission a dû faire face à une grave crise de confiance, lorsque que des partenaires ont émis des ordres de recouvrement unilatéraux et ont menacé de retirer leur appui entièrement – une telle décision aurait produit un effet fort négatif sur l'organisation.

Ce n'était pas une mince affaire de réunir les documents justificatifs des sommes dépensées, depuis très longtemps dans un contexte marqué par la crise. Mais, je suis satisfait que nous l'ayons fait et que nous soyons parvenus à réduire de manière significative le montant des dépenses contestées. Je tiens ici à louer le leadership du vice-président et la persévérance de notre personnel qui a réussi à régler toutes les questions en suspens et réduit le niveau de nos risques financiers à moins de 3 millions de dollars Américains, clôturant, ainsi, avec succès les vérifications financières d'AMIS.



en septembre 2011. Les enseignements que nous avons tirés du cas de l'AMIS nous ont bien servis pour la Mission de l'Union Africaine en Somalie (AMISOM).

V. Consolider les systèmes

Nous ne nous sommes pas attaqués seulement aux problèmes les plus urgents, mais, nous avons aussi interdit tout laxisme dans la gestion des risques financiers, toutes formes de malversations et de négligences, en mettant en place des systèmes et des processus qui empêchent que de telles erreurs ne se reproduisent. Ces mesures comprennent:

- L'introduction, en 2008, du Système SAP, de Planification des ressources d'Entreprise et son extension subséquente à l'AMISOM, ce qui a grandement contribué à améliorer les contrôles financiers internes, rendant la manipulation humaine difficile;
- La réorganisation et le renforcement de l'unité de comptabilité des partenariats, au sein de la Direction de la Programmation, Budgétisation, Finances et Comptabilité, ainsi que l'unité de mobilisation de ressources de la SPPERM;
- L'établissement d'une Division du Fonds Spécial pour la Paix et la Sécurité ;
- Le développement et l'introduction de directives financières et administratives pour les opérations de maintien de la paix;
- Le démarrage de la mise en œuvre du Service des Normes Comptables Internationales Publiques (IPSAS), qui détaille les normes comptables pour l'organisation, en vue d'accroître la transparence et l'imputabilité ;
- Le recrutement de fonctionnaires spécialisés en finances pour les Bureaux de Liaison et les Représentations de l'UA;
- L'amélioration des fonctions et des systèmes de vérification interne, et la mise en œuvre de plus de 90 % des recommandations de l'audit, qui étaient restées non appliquées depuis 2006.
- L'introduction d'une gestion allégée à travers la méthode Kaizen, conduisant à des réductions des déperditions et à l'amélioration des méthodes, des systèmes et des processus de la Commission.
- L'harmonisation de notre pratique et opérations d'approvisionnement aux normes internationales, notamment par l'adoption d'un manuel d'approvisionnement avec des lignes directrices claires et transparentes ;
- Le renforcement de la fonction de planification, de contrôle et d'évaluation, au moyen de la transformation de l'outil de contrôle et d'évaluation (AMERT) africain, qui passe d'un simple outil de suivi des activités à une plate-forme informatisée axée sur les résultats.

En outre, en cas d'irrégularités détectées, comme c'était le cas dans le Bureau du Congo-Kinshasa et au Mali, la Commission a agi promptement. Dans un cas, nous avons même réussi à récupérer les fonds détournés, tandis que INTERPOL traque l'autre coupable, à notre demande.

VI. Gérer les ressources humaines

Notre personnel est notre atout le plus important et nous avons accompli des efforts coordonnés pour accroître la motivation des employés et promouvoir la gestion des compétences. Après vingt ans de statu quo, un nouveau statut du personnel et des règlements renoués ont été adoptés, de manière à faciliter les relations entre les responsables et leurs subordonnés, même si, en raison des répercussions budgétaires, l'application des nouvelles règles se fera progressivement. De même, les termes et conditions de travail ont été révisés et améliorés, en 2009.

Récemment, une étude exhaustive sur le système actuel de gestion des ressources humaines a été entreprise et la Commission envisage d'adopter six politiques administratives qui définiront clairement les règles, les lignes directrices et les responsabilités dans les domaines de l'évaluation du rendement, la responsabilisation, l'affectation, la sélection de Personnel, les missions, le service de l'Assistance médicale, l'allocation de frais de scolarité et les avantages ainsi que les congés.

Afin de renforcer les capacités professionnelles, à travers l'intéressement des meilleurs candidats, les procédures et les opérations de sélection ont été rationalisées. Travaillant en bonne entente avec l'unité chargée des ressources humaines, les départements sont désormais appelés, à participer à la sélection des candidats, de manière qui leur permette de faire le meilleur choix, le plus conforme à leurs besoins en termes de compétences, d'expérience et de professionnalisme.

Cette nouvelle approche en matière de recrutement, incluant les réunions régulières de la commission de sélection et des promotions, nous a permis d'atteindre et même de dépasser les niveaux de recrutement visés et ce pour la première fois depuis la création de la Commission de l'Union Africaine. En 2008, il a été planifié de recruter 50 agents. L'objectif a été atteint conformément à nos prévisions. Il en a été de même en 2009. En 2010, 48 recrutements ont été réalisés et en 2011, le nombre des recrutements a dépassé les prévisions, avec 55 agents recrutés ; Et pour répondre aux demandes en personnel, il a été procédé à la révision de l'organigramme et à la création par les instances de décision, de 123 postes.



Le Conseil de discipline a été réactivé et aujourd'hui, il se réunit toutes les semaines pour examiner les affaires pendantes. Dans le même temps, la qualité des services médicaux a été améliorée et la gamme de services élargie.

VII. Développer la technologie

La focalisation sur le développement des TIC a continué à servir l'habilitation des personnels à devenir plus productifs dans leur travail, grâce à la fourniture de produits et services techniques et informatiques innovateurs et de haute qualité, centrée sur l'utilisateur, aux coûts réels, permettant le maintien d'un réseau fiable, d'un centre de données de base susceptibles d'appuyer les applications propres aux travaux de la Commission et la formation régulière du personnel technique et des utilisateurs finaux, en fournissant des outils, des orientations et des normes de gestion appropriés.

La connexion internet sans fil de très bonne qualité constitue une fonctionnalité très appréciée, elle constitue un acquis précieux au sein de notre siège. Notre réseau plus fiable et sécurisé, ne laissant qu'une marge minimum à l'interruption du service; le centre des données plus stable, le réseau étendu et accessible aux membres du personnel et aux invités et le système de messagerie est fiable, sont autant de réalisations à notre actif. Aussi, la plupart des bureaux régionaux sont désormais intégrés dans le réseau de l'administration centrale. L'utilisation de la vidéoconférence est fort répandue, comme moyen d'économiser temps et argent, et d'augmenter la productivité.

Des efforts supplémentaires sont actuellement déployés pour intégrer les logiciels qui permettront de faciliter le partage des flux de connaissances et des documents au sein de la Commission, et dont on attend qu'ils se traduisent par un développement du travail collectif et par le partage en temps réel des informations essentielles, de sorte qu'il en résulte une nette amélioration de l'efficacité et de la performance de notre travail sur le terrain.

VIII. Assurer la liaison avec les intervenants

La CUA ne fonctionne pas à vide. Les États membres, le peuple d'Afrique, les institutions publiques et privées, les médias sont tous intéressés aux activités de la Commission et veulent être partie prenante dans son travail.

Le Bureau du Secrétaire Général de la Commission a joué un rôle clé en matière de coordination entre les directions et les départements, et en apportant l'appui nécessaire aux réunions de la Commission ainsi qu'à celles du Comité des Représentants Permanents et du Conseil exécutif. En outre, la Direction de l'Information et de la Communication a été renforcée afin d'augmenter le niveau d'interaction avec les intervenants et d'accroître la connaissance des activités de la Commission et de sa visibilité.

Afin d'assurer la cohérence entre les trois principales institutions panafricaines, un bureau de soutien commun a été créé avec la CEA et la Banque Africaine de Développement, en vue d'accroître la convergence sur certains projets prioritaires grâce à l'harmonisation des programmes, des plans de travail, des réunions et des autres activités.

Conclusion

Ce bref exposé n'est qu'un aperçu des actions entreprises et des réformes réalisées durant les trois dernières années et demie dans le but d'accroître la capacité et l'efficacité de la Commission. Le résultat a abouti à une organisation plus concentrée et structurée, gouvernée par les règles de droit. Bien entendu, même si beaucoup a été accompli, je serai le premier, en accord avec le vice-président de la commission, à reconnaître que beaucoup reste à faire sur la voie du progrès et du développement.

Notre ambition est d'élever la capacité de la Commission à exécuter le budget, afin qu'elle puisse s'acquitter de son mandat correctement. Il est utile, à ce propos, de rappeler que le budget annuel de l'union est passé de 40 millions de dollars à 250 millions en moins de dix ans, alors que la restructuration des organigrammes et des systèmes est encore à ses débuts.

Nos équipes travaillent actuellement à l'élaboration des procédures susceptibles de régler ces problèmes. L'amélioration des compétences du personnel occupent, également, une place de élevée dans nos priorités, sachant que le besoin concernant le recrutement, la formation et l'intégration des agents nouveaux engendre un coût qui ne se reflète pas dans notre travail. D'un point de vue positif, il convient de signaler que d'autres organisations apprécient la haute valeur professionnelle de nos agents.

Je tiens ici à réaffirmer que nous sommes décidés à intensifier les efforts pour soutenir les changements actuels et à relever les défis restants. A l'heure où les regards se tournent vers l'Afrique, je suis convaincu que les bases sont en place pour permettre à la Commission de jouer son rôle de la meilleure façon, tant au niveau continental qu'international, au cours des prochaines années.

La Lettre du Président

Publication mensuelle de
La Direction de l'Information et de la Communication,
Bureau du Président

Commission de l'Union Africaine (CUA)
P.O Box 3243, Addis Ababa, Ethiopia
E-mail: dinfo@africa-union.org
Web Site: www.au.int

Appendix M: Letter from the Chairperson (English TT)



Letter From The Chairperson

Issue 2. December 2011



Jean Ping
Chairperson
African Union Commission

Transforming the Commission into the Engine of Africa's Renaissance

Letter From The Chairperson

Change is often not a choice. It is a matter of survival because circumstances are different or because our own demands have evolved, we sometimes need to change our way of doing things

When my colleagues and I took office in April 2008, we knew we had no choice but to engage in an ambitious and predictably difficult reform agenda. The Commission needed a profound transformation in order to fulfill its role of main instrument for conception, implementation and coordination of the Union's decisions and programmes, thereby serving the interests of the African people. Indeed, such was the mandate delivered to us by the Assembly and the Executive Council. Basing ourselves on the report of the High Level Panel of the Audit of the African Union our priorities were clearly identified and we had to deliver in the face of many systemic challenges.

First and foremost, the immediate priority was to accelerate and complete the transformation of the Secretariat of the Organisation of African Unity (OAU) into the African Union Commission (AUC). With the rightful liberation aspirations of the African people achieved and African States decolonized, including bringing the ignominious apartheid to an end, the Heads of State and Government of the African Union committed the new organisation to spearheading the development and integration agenda of the continent while assuring peace and security for its people.

Secondly, as the executive organ of the Union, the Commission had the responsibility of putting in place the systems and structures that would increase synergy between Member States, AU organs and other pan-African organisations, taking into account the principles of complementarity, subsidiary and comparative advantage. Thirdly, the Commission's major task was to ascertain sustainable mobilisation of resources for the proper functioning of the institution.

These goals were clearly spelt out in the AU Strategic Plan 2009-2012 under the Institutional and Capacity Building Programme, with the following 4 objectives:

1. Strengthen the capacity and enhance the operational efficiency and effectiveness of the African Union Commission;
2. Promote synergies, linkages and good working relations with all AU organs;
3. Promote effective cooperation and collaboration with Member States and the Regional Economic Communities;
4. Promote strategic partnerships for leveraging sustainable sources of funding and comparative advantages.

Three and a half years down the road, as the accountable officer of the Commission, I am satisfied that we have made substantial and tangible progress in addressing all of these. Important initiatives have been taken that are contributing to the setting up of an institution such as the Heads of State and Government dreamt of. Every athlete needs to strengthen his muscles before engaging in competition. For those who care to look above the

necessary turmoil and complexity of this huge construction site, the frame of a solid AUC can already be distinguished, more credible, more reliable, more capable of performing its role of engine of the African Renaissance.



In order to accomplish this, our efforts have been concentrated on strengthening the core systems and methods of the Commission:

I. Giving Direction

For the first time in 2009, the Strategic Plan of the African Union was designed to be results oriented and programme based. This single endeavour constituted a major shift in the way the Commission carries out its operations. By adopting these principles, the Commission paved the way for increased interaction between Departments, reduced overlap of activities, improved focus and pertinence on the ground as well as the acceleration of the integration of NEPAD into AU structures and processes.

We insisted on weekly Commission meetings with the Chairperson, the Deputy Chairperson, the Commissioners and their key staff, every Tuesday, in order to exchange information at the highest level of management and increase inter-departmental coordination. Follow up on cross-cutting programmes and projects is carried out through regular meetings with Directors.

As important, we made it a priority to brief and involve Member States and the Permanent Representatives Committee on our programmes and projects in a consistent manner, believing that only through a systemic integrative approach would we achieve the ambitious, yet necessary, objectives of the AU.

II. Creating Instruments

In order to support Departments in adopting this approach, the Strategic Planning, Policy Monitoring and Evaluation and Resource Mobilization (SPPMERM) Directorate was fortified and training in the logical framework instrument was provided to programme managers, planners and senior staff. The budget programming cycle and calendar is being re-aligned so that funding is received in advance at the beginning of the financial year and implementation can start on time, instead of the 3 to 6 month delay that is currently the norm due to late availability of funds.

In line with the AU Financial Rules and Regulations, the Commission, as we have argued, will adhere to multi-year planning and enhance medium-term expenditure framework as from the next budget cycle. The benefits will include: reduced time devoted to budget development, improved long-range and strategic planning, the development of multi-year projects, a more policy-oriented budget process, strengthened performance management, and reduced costs associated with the budget preparation.

We have already started designing the monitoring and evaluation framework which will allow programme and project managers and their staff to get a clear measure of their results on the ground. This will increase their ability to assess the impact of their activities, giving them the required data to redefine their implementation strategy, if needed, in view of achieving the programme and project objectives.

III. Assuring Resources

In view of the enormous costs of financing Africa's security, development, governance and integration agenda, there is need to mobilise additional resources to support Member States' assessed contributions. We have strived to secure adequate and predictable funding for our operations. We have not got there yet. However, a High Level Panel on Alternative Sources of Financing the African Union has been commissioned under the leadership of H. E. Olesegun Obasanjo, former President of Nigeria. They have undertaken consultations during the year and will submit their report shortly.

In the same vein of increasing predictability of funding, Joint Programming Agreements have been negotiated and signed with partners for three programmes: Peace and Security, Shared Values and the Institution and Capacity Building Programme. These arrangements will increase predictability of funding and transparency as well as reduce transaction costs in reporting and auditing. They are in line with the Paris Declaration on aid effectiveness and the Accra Agenda for Action.

IV. Regaining Trust

The greatest challenge that the current Commission faced on assuming duty was linked to delays and gaps in financial reporting between 2003 and 2008, specially relating to Program Budgets financed by partners. As an example, USD 300 million had been spent without being fully and properly accounted for during African Union



Mission in Sudan (AMIS) operations between 2003 and 2007. The Commission faced a severe credibility crisis: partners had issued unilateral recovery orders and were threatening to pull their support out entirely – a decision which would, in effect, have significantly negatively affected the operations of the organisation.

It was not an easy task to find supporting documents for monies that had been spent such a long time before and in the context of conflict. But, I am glad that we did do it and reduce the ineligible expenditures significantly. I would here like to praise the leadership of the Deputy Chairperson and the perseverance of our staff who managed to clear up all pending issues and reduced our level of financial risks to less than USD 3 million, thereby successfully closing the AMIS audits in September 2011. The lessons we learnt in AMIS served us well in the African Union Mission in Somalia (AMISOM).

V. Consolidating Systems

Not only did we tackle the most pressing concerns, but, to enable us to effect zero tolerance in financial risk management and all forms of irregularities and shortcomings, we instituted systems and processes that would prevent such catastrophes from happening again. These include:

- The introduction of the SAP enterprise resource planning system in 2008 and its subsequent extension to AMISOM, which has greatly enhanced flow of information and internal financial controls, making it difficult for human tampering;
- The reorganisation and strengthening of Partner Accounting Unit within the Directorate of Programming, Budgeting, Finance and Accounting as well as that of the Resource Mobilization Unit in SPPMERM;
- The establishment of a special Peace & Security Fund Division;
- The development and introduction of financial and administrative guidelines for peace keeping operations;
- The ongoing implementation of International Public Service Accounting Standards (IPSAS) which details accounting standards for the organisation in view of increasing transparency and accountability;
- The recruitment of Finance Officers for AU Liaison and Representational Offices;
- The upgrading of internal audit functions and systems and the implementation of over 90% of previously pending audit recommendations from 2006;
- The introduction of a lean management through the Kaizen methodology, leading to waste reduction and confirmed improvement of methods, systems and processes of the Commission;
- The elevation of our procurement practice and operations to international standards, including the adoption of a Procurement Manual with clear and transparent guidelines;
- The strengthening of the planning, monitoring and evaluation function through the transformation of the African Monitoring and Evaluation Tool (AMERT) from an activity-based tool into a results-based computerised platform.

Moreover, in the case of irregularities detected, such as in the Congo-Kinshasa office and in Mali, the Commission acted promptly. In one case, we even managed to recover the embezzled funds, while INTERPOL is pursuing the other culprit on our request.

VI. Managing Human Resources

Our staff is our most important asset and we have made consistent efforts to improve employee motivation and satisfaction as well as talent management. After twenty years of status quo, new Staff Rules and Regulations have been adopted, which will facilitate employer – employee relations, even though, due to budgetary implications, their implementation will be rolled out gradually. Terms and conditions of service were reviewed and improved in 2009.

Recently, a comprehensive study of the current human resources management system was undertaken and the Commission is considering for adoption, six administrative policies that will clearly define rules, guidelines and responsibilities in the areas of: Performance Management and Accountability, Recruitment and Personnel Selection, Mission Travel, Medical Assistance Plan, Education Allowance and Benefits, Staff Leave and Holiday.

In order to build capacity by attracting the best candidates, recruitment procedures and processes have been streamlined. Working along side the human resources unit, Departments are now called to participate in the selection process so that they can choose the best suited candidate to their needs in terms of qualification, experience and professionalism.

This new approach to recruitment, including the regular meetings of the Appointments and Promotion Board (APROB), made it possible for us to meet and even exceed recruitment targets for the first time in the history of the AUC. In 2008, 50 recruitments were planned and achieved as in 2009; in 2010, as targeted, 48 people were recruited and in 2011, we have achieved the target of 55 recruitments. Moreover, responding to the needs of

Departments, the organisational structure has been reviewed and an additional 123 positions adopted by the policy organs.

The Disciplinary Board has been resuscitated and now meets on a weekly basis to consider pending cases. At the same time, the quality of medical services has been upgraded and the range of services increased.



VII. Leveraging Technology

The focus on ICT development has continued to be on empowering staff to become more productive in their work, through provision of high quality, innovative, user-centric and cost effective IT products and services, maintaining a reliable network and data center infrastructure to support the Commission's business applications; conducting regular training for both the technical staff and end-users; and providing appropriate content management tools, guidelines and standards.

Very good quality wireless internet connection is a much appreciated feature of our compound. Other key outcomes have included a more reliable and secure network with minimum downtime, a more stable data center, an expanded network that is more accessible to staff and guests, and a reliable e-mail system. Most regional offices are now integrated in the Headquarters network. The use of video conferencing has now become more mainstream as a means of saving time and money, as well as increasing productivity.

More efforts are currently being made to integrate softwares that will facilitate knowledge sharing and document workflow throughout the Commission, with the expected results of increasing collaborative work, sharing critical information on time, thereby highly improving the efficiency of our action on the ground.

VIII. Liaising with Stakeholders

The AUC does not function in a vacuum. Members States, the people of Africa, public and private institutions, media – all have an interest in the activities of the Commission and have a desire to be part of its work.

The Office of the Secretary General to the Commission has been instrumental in increasing inter-Departmental and inter-Directorate coordination and providing support to meetings of the Commission as well as those of the Permanent Representatives Committee and the Executive Council. In addition, the Directorate of Information and Communication has been strengthened in order to increase the level of interaction with stakeholders and increase knowledge of the Commission's activities and raise its visibility.

In order to achieve coherence between the three main pan-African institutions, a Joint Secretariat Support Office has been established together with the UNECA and AfDB, with a view to increasing convergence on some priority projects through harmonisation of programmes, work plans, meetings and other activities.

Conclusion

This is a very brief overview of some of the actions taken and reform initiated during the past three and a half years in order to increase capability and the capacity of the Commission. The result has been a more focused and disciplined organisation, governed by the rule of law. Of course, while a lot has been accomplished, I will be the first, together with the Deputy Chairperson, to admit that there is still room for growth and improvement.

Our ambition is to increase the budget absorption capacity of the Commission so that it can concretely deliver on its mandate. It is good to remember that the annual budget of the AU has grown from USD 40 million to USD 250 million in less than ten years, whereas the internal structures and systems have hardly been reviewed. Our teams are currently working on measures to address his concern. Tackling staff turnover is equally high on our agenda, as the need to recruit, train and integrate new staff represents a hidden cost to our operations. Yet, on the up side, this also shows that the quality of our staff is attractive to other organisations.

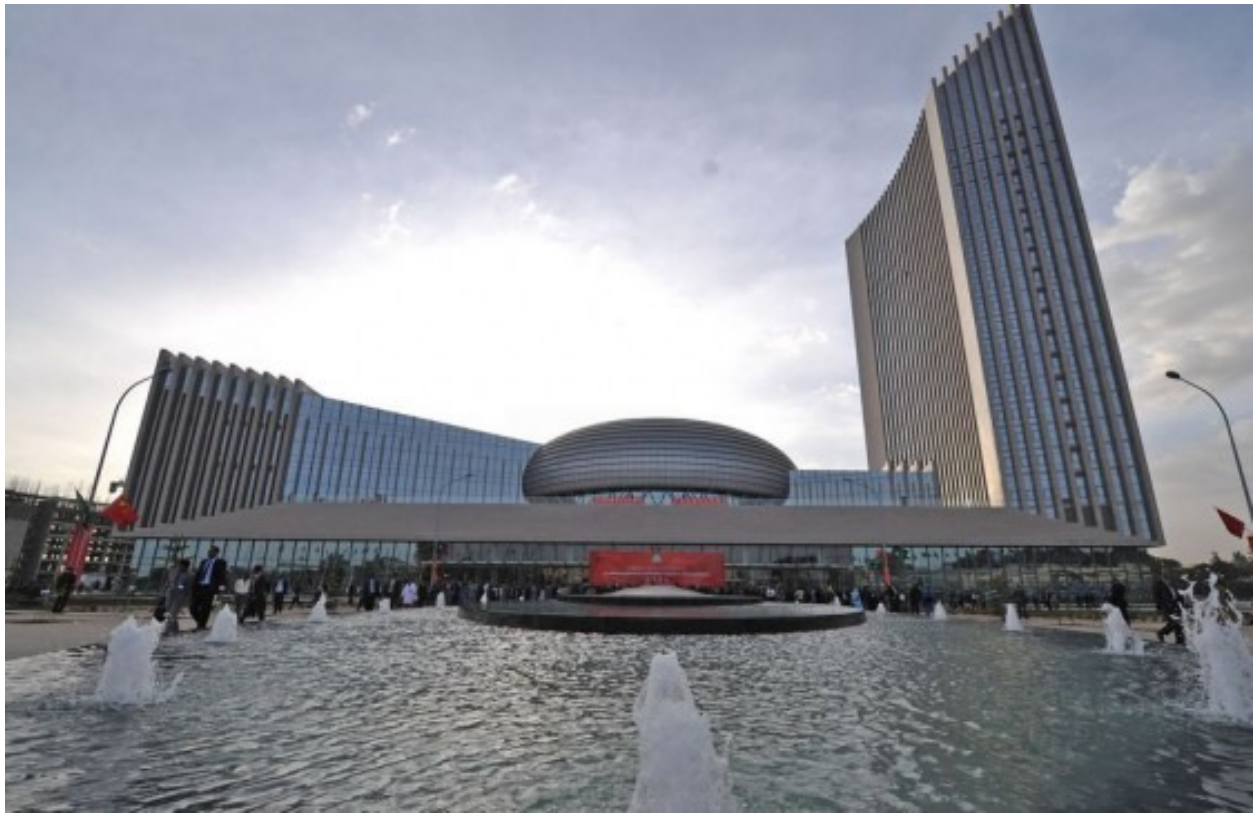
I would like here to reaffirm that we are committed to intensifying efforts to sustain the current changes and to deal with the remaining challenges. As all eyes are now converging on Africa, I am confident that the foundations are now in place that will allow the Commission to better play its role on the continental and international arenas in the coming years.

The Letter from the Chairperson

Monthly Publication
Published by: The Directorate of Information
and Communication
Bureau of the Chairperson

African Union Commission
P.O Box 3243
Addis Ababa, Ethiopia
E-mail: dinfo@africa-union.org
Web Site: www.au.int

Appendix N: Exterior View of the AUC Conference



Exterior view of the African Union Conference Centre located in Ethiopia's capital city of Addis Ababa

Source: www.africa-union.org

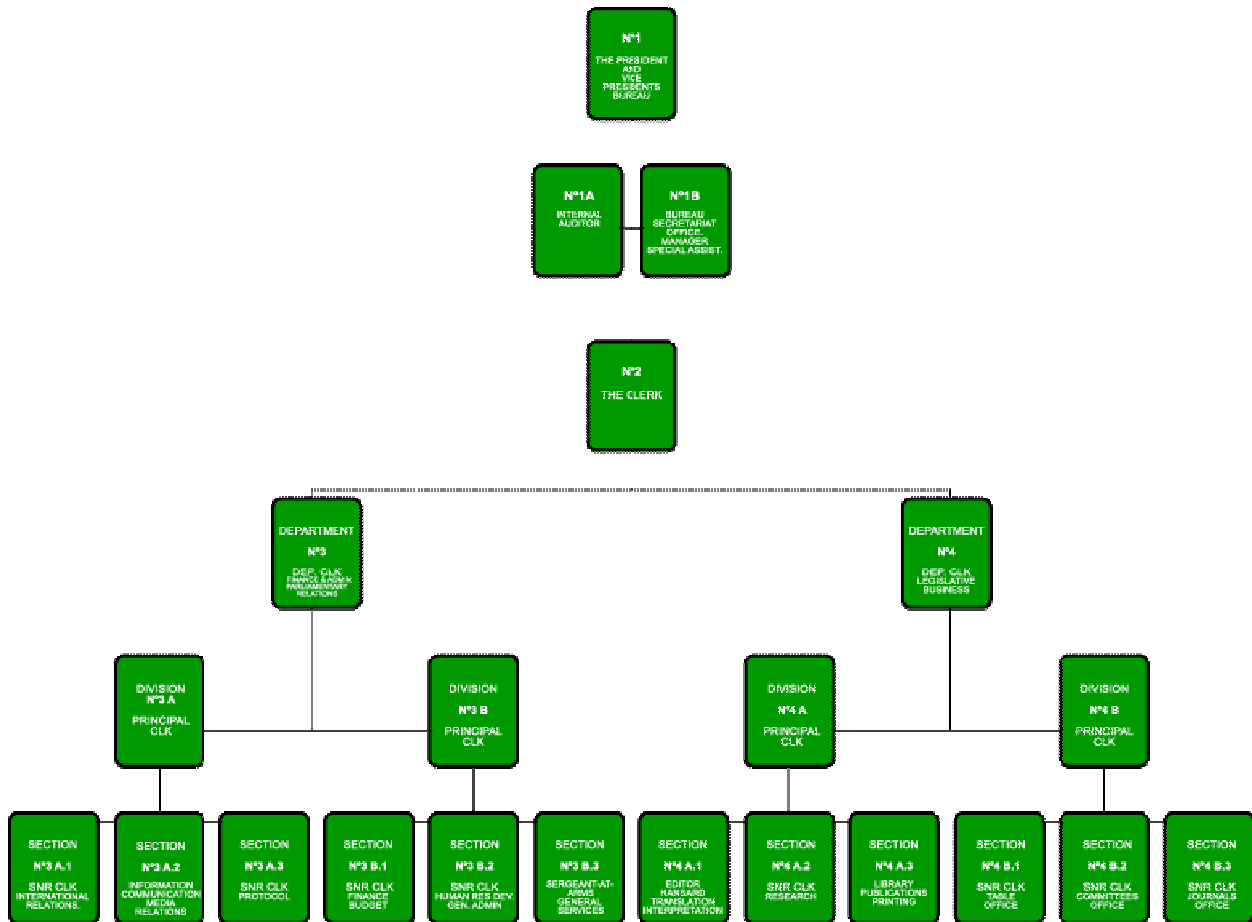
Appendix O: Chamber of the PAP



Chamber of the Pan-African Parliament (PAP) in Midrand, Johannesburg (RSA)

Source: www.pan-african-parliament.org

Appendix P: Organogram of the PAP



Source: www.pan-african-parliament.org